| | |
|---|---|
| **TO** | Kath Coombes, Acting Manager, Planning – Regional, North, West, and Islands |
| **FROM** | Jo Hart, Senior Policy Planner |
| **DATE** | 2 April 2026 |
| **SUBJECT** | **Update requested to the Auckland Unitary Plan (Operative in Part 2016) (AUP)** |

I request an update to the AUP as outlined below:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Reason for update** | Alteration to designation confirmed |
| **Chapter(s)** | Chapter K – Designations and Schedules – New Zealand Transport Agency |
| **Designation only** | |
| **Designation # 6766** | State Highway 16 – Hobsonville to Wellsford (New Zealand Transport Agency) |
| **Locations:** | State Highway 16 from Brigham Creek, Hobsonville to State Highway 1, Wellsford |
| **Lapse Date** | Given effect to (i.e. no lapse date) |
| **Purpose** | State Highway 16 |
| **Changes to text (shown in underline and strikethrough)** | Amended text in Chapter K – Designations and Schedules – New Zealand Transport Agency (Designation 6766).<br><br>Refer to Attachments B and C (as per the Environment Court Consent Order Decisions [2026] NZEnvC 003, [2025] NZEnvC 198, and [2025] NZEnvC 341) in Attachment B. |
| **Changes to diagrams** | N/A |
| **Changes to spatial data** | Removal of the Plan Modification – Notice of Requirement layer.<br><br>Replace with the amended designation boundary and notation in the AUP Unitary Plan – Management Layers – Designations<br><br>Environment Court decisions.<br><br>[2025] NZEnvC 341 - Appendix A (108-128 Main Road, Kumeu)<br><br>[2026] NZEnvC 003 - Appendix A (551 State Highway 16, Main Road)<br><br>[2025] NZEnvC 198 - Appendix A (993 Waitakere Road, Kumeu) |
| **Attachments** | Attachment A: New Zealand Transport Agency Decision |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Attachment B: Environment Court Decisions [2026] NZEnvC 003, [2025] NZEnvC 198, and [2025] NZEnvC 341).<br><br>Attachment C: Updated New Zealand Transport Agency Designation 6766 State Highway 16 text (underscored) (pages 728 to 765)<br><br>Attachment D: Updated New Zealand Transport Agency Designation 6766 State Highway 16 text (Clean) (pages 767 to 797).<br><br>Attachment E: Designation 6766 (State Highway 16) in the AUP GIS viewer map (Before/After). |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Maps prepared by**:<br>Mitesh Bhula<br>Geospatial Specialist | **Text Entered by:**<br>Bronnie Styles<br>Planning Technician |
| **Signature:**<br>  | **Signature:**<br>  |
| **Prepared by:**<br>Jo Hart<br>Senior Policy Planner | **Reviewed by:**<br>Eryn Shields<br>Team Leader |
| **Signature:**<br>  | **Signature:**<br>  <br>7 April 2026 |
| **Authorised by:**<br>Kath Coombes<br>Acting Manager Planning – Regional, North, West, and Islands | |
| **Signature:**<br>  <br>7 April 2026 | |

# Attachment A

# New Zealand Transport Agency Decision

Level 5, AON Centre
29 Customs Street West
Private Bag 106602
Auckland 1143
New Zealand
**T** 64 9 969 9800
**F** 64 9 969 9813
**www.nzta.govt.nz**

31 May 2024

Todd Elder, Senior Policy Planner
Central/South Planning Unit - Plans and Places
Auckland Council
Private Bag 92300
Victoria Street West, Auckland 1142

Dear Todd

**NOTICE OF DECISION OF NZ TRANSPORT AGENCY WAKA KOTAHI UNDER SECTION 172 OF THE RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT 1991**

Thank you for your letter received 18 April 2024 advising of the recommendations of the Auckland Council Independent Hearing Commissioners in relation to the five NZ Transport Agency Waka Kotahi (**NZTA**) Notices of Requirement that comprise part of the North West Project:

- NoR S1 – Alternative State Highway
- NoR S2 – SH16 Main Road
- NoR S3 – Rapid Transit Corridor
- NoR KS – Kumeū Rapid Transit Station
- NoR HS – Huapai Rapid Transit Station

The Commissioners' recommendation was that the Notices of Requirement should be **confirmed** subject to conditions.

Pursuant to section 172 of the Resource Management Act 1991, NZTA **accepts** the Commissioners' recommendation that the NORs should be confirmed and **accepts in part** and **rejects in part** the Commissioners' recommendations on conditions of the Notices of Requirement.

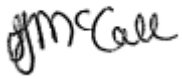
The **Table 1** below sets out:

- The Commissioners' recommended conditions which are rejected or partially accepted, along with the reasons for our decision; and
- Other modifications that NZTA has made to the conditions for consistency, clarity and ease of implementation.

Only those recommended conditions that NZTA has modified are outlined in the table below (shown in bold strikethrough for deletions and bold underline for additions).

Minor formatting and grammatical changes recommended by the Commissioners where they have been adopted have not been tracked.

Complete clean sets of designation conditions as a result of the NZTA decision, are **attached** to this letter as **Appendices A – E**. The clean set of conditions in Appendices A – E includes the changes set out in the table below, formatting changes (including rearranging order of conditions) and minor non-substantive changes (such as capitalisations).



Yours sincerely

Sonya McCall

Team Leader, Auckland / Northland Poutiaki Taiao / Environmental Planning

Transport Services

Pursuant to authority delegated by New Zealand Transport Agency Waka Kotahi

**Table 1: Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners for NoRs S1, S2, S3, KS and HS**

| Designation | Condition number | **Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners** (additions to conditions are in **bold and underlined** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | **Reason for modifications** |
|---|---|---|---|
| All | - | **~~These conditions relate to Notices of Requirement S1, S2, S3, HS and KS, described as follows:~~**<br><br>**~~S1 Alternative State Highway (ASH): A new four-laned dual carriageway motorway and the upgrade of the Brigham Creek Interchange.~~**<br><br>**~~S2 SH16 Main Road: An upgrade to the existing urban corridor including active modes and realignment of the Station Road intersection with State Highway 16.~~**<br><br>**~~S3 Rapid Transit Corridor (RTC): A new rapid transit corridor and active mode corridor in one co-located corridor.~~**<br><br>**~~HS Huapai Station: A new rapid transit station, including transport interchange facilities, park-and-ride and accessway.~~**<br><br>**~~KS Kumeū Station: A new rapid transit station, including transport interchange facilities and accessway.~~** | **Reject new conditions.**<br><br>The Panel has proposed new conditions to describe the designation purposes. NZTA rejects these additional conditions because the purpose of the designation is already described in each of the NORs, and that purpose will be reflected in the AUP schedule of designations. *Schedule 1: General Accordance Plans and Information* provides the Project description for which the works within the designation shall be undertaken in general accordance with, as referred to in Condition 1. |
| All | Abbreviations and definitions | **Certification <u>of material changes to management plans</u>**<br><br>Confirmation from the Manager that a **~~CNVMP Schedule (or change thereto) or a~~** material change to a management plan has been prepared in accordance with the condition to which it relates.<br><br>A **~~CNVMP Schedule (or change thereto) or a~~** material change to a management plan shall be deemed certified:<br><br>a) where the Requiring Authority has received written confirmation from the Council that the **~~CNVMP Schedule or the~~** material change to the management plan is certified; or<br><br>**b)** ten (10) working days from the submission of the **~~CNVMP Schedule or the~~** material change to the management plan where no written confirmation of certification has been received; or<br><br>**~~c) five (5) working days from the submission of a change to the CNVMP Schedule where no written confirmation of certification has been received.~~** | **Reject amendments to definition including the additional clause (c)**<br><br>The Panel has recommended amendments to the definition of "certification" to the effect that certification would be required for CNVMP Schedules (and changes). NZTA rejects these amendments as certification is only required for material changes to management plans and requiring certification of the CNVMP Schedules is unnecessary for the reasons explained in closing submissions and the evidence of Ms Wilkening.[1]<br><br>**Amendment by NZTA**<br><br>To improve clarity, NZTA inserts "*of material changes to management plans*" into the definition heading. |

[1] Closing legal submissions of Requiring Authority, dated 24 November 2023, at [16.11]; and Evidence of Siiri Wilkening, dated 8 September 2023, at [7.16].

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and underlined** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| All | Abbreviations and definitions | ~~**Developer**~~<br><br>~~**Any legal entity that intends to master plan or develop land adjacent to the designation**~~ | **Amendment by NZTA**<br><br>NZTA rejects the addition of the Land use Integration Process (LIP) condition, therefore the definition is not required. |
| All | Abbreviations and definitions | ~~**Development Agency**~~<br><br>~~**Public entities involved in development projects**~~ | **Amendment by NZTA**<br><br>NZTA rejects the addition of the LIP condition, therefore the definition is not required. |
| All | Abbreviations and definitions | **EIANZ Guidelines**<br><br>Ecological Impact Assessment: EIANZ guidelines for use in New Zealand: terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems, second edition, dated May 2018 ~~**(or any updated version).**~~ | **Reject the insertion of or 'any updated version' to the definition of the EIANZ Guidelines**<br><br>The Panel has recommended adding "or any updated version" at the end of this definition. NZTA rejects this amendment but has instead proposed an amendment to the Pre-Construction Ecological Survey condition (as discussed within that condition below). |
| All | Abbreviations and definitions | **Identified Biodiversity Area**<br><br>Means an area or areas **of features** of ecological value where the Project ecologist has identified that the project will potentially have a moderate or greater level of ecological effect, prior to implementation of impact management measures, as determined in accordance with the EIANZ guidelines | **Amendment by NZTA**<br><br>Insertion of the word "features" as it appears to have been missed in error. |
| | | **Mana Whenua**<br><br>Mana Whenua as referred to in the conditions ~~**is**~~ **are** considered to be**,** ~~**(as a minimum)**~~ but not limited to**,** the following (in no particular order), who at the time of Notice of Requirement expressed a desire to be involved in the Project ~~**includes but is not limited to**~~:<br>• Te Kawerau **ā**~~**a**~~ Maki<br>• Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara<br>• Te Ākitai Waiohua | **Amendment by NZTA**<br><br>Amendments to improve drafting.<br><br>The note has been deleted as this line item is a definition, not a condition. |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | **~~Note: Other iwi and hapū not identified above may have an interest in the Project and should be consulted.~~** | |
| All | Abbreviations and definitions | **Project Liaison Person**<br>The person or persons appointed **~~by the Requiring Authority~~** for the duration of the Project's Construction Works to be the main point of contact for persons wanting information about the Project or affected by the Construction Works. | **Reject additional wording.**<br>The Panel has recommended inserting the phrase "by the Requiring Authority". NZTA rejects this additional text as the definition defines the role, not who would appoint the person. The approach is consistent with the definition for Suitably Qualified Person, which does not (and does not need to) say who would appoint that person. |
| All | Abbreviations and definitions | **Requiring Authority**<br>Has the same meaning as section 166 of the RMA and, for this Designation is **~~the New Zealand Transport Agency Waka Kotahi~~ <u>New Zealand Transport Agency.</u>** | **Accept in part.**<br>The Panel has recommended amending the reference to "Auckland Transport" to "the New Zealand Transport Agency Waka Kotahi". The reference to Auckland Transport was included in error and the reference is updated to refer to "New Zealand Transport Agency", being the legal name of the Requiring Authority.<br>Other references in the condition set have also been changed from Waka Kotahi to NZTA. |
| **<u>All except S3</u>** | **<u>Stakeholders</u>** | **<u>Stakeholders to be identified ~~in accordance with Condition 3B~~ which may include as appropriate:</u>**<br>**<u>(a) adjacent owners and occupiers;</u>**<br>**<u>(b) adjacent business owners and operators;</u>**<br>**<u>(c) central and local government bodies;</u>**<br>**<u>(d) community groups;</u>**<br>**<u>(e) developers;</u>**<br>**<u>(f) development agencies;</u>**<br>**<u>(g) educational facilities; and</u>** | **Reject**<br>See explanation in line item below. |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | **<u>(h) network utility operators.</u>** | |
| **<u>NOR S3</u>** | Abbreviations and definitions | **Stakeholders to be identified ~~in accordance with Condition 3B~~, which may include as appropriate:**<br>(a) adjacent owners and occupiers;<br>(b) adjacent business owners and operators;<br>(c) central and local government bodies;<br>(d) community groups;<br>(e) developers;<br>(f) development agencies;<br>(g) educational facilities;<br>(h) network utility operators; and<br>(i) emergency services. | **Reject addition of 'emergency services' to all designations**<br>The Panel has recommended removing the specific definition of "Stakeholders" for NoR S3 and instead applying the NoR S3 definition across all corridors. The effect of this recommendation would be to include "emergency services" as an example of a Stakeholder for all corridors not just NoR S3.<br>NZTA rejects this amendment as emergency services has been intentionally included in NoR S3 only as the Kumeū Fire Station site is located within the designation footprint. The list is framed inclusively and therefore is not exhaustive of those Stakeholders that may be engaged with at time of construction. NZTA would typically engage with emergency services and a wide range of other parties as part of the project development and delivery process – it is not necessary to list all parties in RMA conditions. |
| **~~S1, S3 HS, KS~~** | | **~~Conditions 1 – 36 of this designation shall only apply to the work described in the Project Description and the altered area identified in the Concept Plan in Schedule 1.~~** | **Reject**<br>The Panel has proposed this condition for all new corridors in addition to NoR S2 (an alteration to an existing designation). NZTA rejects this new condition as it is unnecessary for new corridors. The condition set has been combined for convenience during the statutory process but will be split out for each of the individual designations when included in the AUP (and as attached to this decision). The relevant conditions will be applied as appropriate to each designation. |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| **All** | **2** | **Project Information**<br>(a) A project website, or equivalent virtual information source, shall be established as soon as reasonably practicable, and within 6 months of the inclusion of the designation in the AUP.<br>(b) All directly affected owners and occupiers shall be notified in writing as soon as reasonably practicable once the website or equivalent information source has been established. The project website or virtual information source shall include these conditions and shall provide information on:<br>…<br>(vi) how / where to access noise modelling contours to inform **~~the design of~~** development adjacent to the designation;<br>(vii) when and how to apply for consent for works in the designation under section 176(1)(b) of the RMA; and<br>… | **Accept (a)**<br>The Panel proposed to amend the wording of clause (a) to read "… inclusion of the designation in the AUP". NZTA accepts this amendment.<br>**Reject (b)(vi)**<br>The Panel recommended including the words "the design of" into clause (b)(vi). NZTA rejects the addition because noise modelling contours will be made available to inform all aspects of such development (such as subdivision layout and building location). |
| **~~S1~~**<br>**~~S2~~**<br>**~~S3~~**<br>**~~HS~~** | **~~2A~~** | **~~Land use Integration Process (LIP)~~**<br>**~~(a) A Land use Integration Process for the period between confirmation of the designation and the Start of Construction shall be established. The purpose of this process is to encourage and facilitate the integration of master planning and land use development activity on land directly affected by, or adjacent to the designation. To achieve this purpose:~~**<br>**~~(i) The contact details of a nominated contact shall be included on the project website (or equivalent information source) required to be established by Condition (2)(a)(iii).~~**<br>**~~(ii) The nominated contact shall facilitate engagement with a Developer or Development Agency wanting to work with the Requiring Authority to integrate their development plans or master planning with the designation.~~**<br>**~~(b) At any time prior to the Start of Construction, the nominated contact shall be available to engage with a Developer or Development Agency for the purpose of:~~**<br>**~~(i) Responding to requests for information regarding design details that could assist with land use integration; and~~** | **Reject additional condition.**<br>The Panel has recommended that the LIP condition be included in the NZTA designations. NZTA rejects this recommendation because it is unnecessary for the reasons explained in the evidence of Mr Elley, i.e. that transport corridor interfaces with adjacent land uses are appropriately managed through existing processes.[2] As detailed in the evidence of Mr Rama,[3] NZTA already has well established and effective processes in place to manage works within the designation through the section 176 processes. |

[2] Rebuttal Evidence of Regan Elley, dated 8 September 2023, at [3.9] – [3.16]
[3] Primary Evidence of Deepak Rama, dated 2 August 2023 [6.1] – [6.4]

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | ~~(ii) Receiving information from a Developer or Development Agency regarding master planning or land development details that could assist with land use integration.~~<br><br>~~(c) Information provided by the Requiring Authority under Condition 2A(b) above may include but not be limited to the following matters:~~<br><br>~~(i) Design details of the project including:~~<br><br>~~A. boundary treatment (e.g. the use of retaining walls or batter slopes);~~<br><br>~~B. the horizontal and vertical alignment of the road (levels);~~<br><br>~~C. potential locations for mid-block crossings;~~<br><br>~~D. integration of stormwater infrastructure; and~~<br><br>~~E. outputs from any flood modelling,~~<br><br>~~(ii) Potential modifications to the extent of the designation in response to information received through Condition 2A(b)(ii);~~<br><br>~~(iii) A process for the Requiring Authority to undertake a technical review of or provide comments on any master planning or development proposal advanced by the Developer or Development Agency as it relates to integration with the Project;~~<br><br>~~(iv) Details of how to apply for written consent from the Requiring Authority for any development proposal that relates to land is within the designation under section 176(1)(b) of the RMA; and~~<br><br>~~(v) How / where to access noise modelling contours to inform development adjacent to the designation.~~<br><br>~~(d) Where information is requested from the Requiring Authority and is available, it shall be provided unless there are reasonable grounds for not providing it.~~<br><br>~~(e) The Requiring Authority shall maintain a record of engagement with Developers and Development Agencies for the period following the date in which this designation is included in the AUP through to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The record shall include:~~<br><br>~~(i) A list of all Developers and Development Agencies who indicated through the notice of requirement process that they intend to master plan or develop sites along the Project alignment that may require specific integration with the designation;~~<br><br>~~(ii) A summary of requests made to the Requiring Authority that could influence detailed design, the results of any engagement and, where such requests that could influence~~ | |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | **~~detailed design are declined, the reasons why the Requiring Authority has declined the requests; and~~**<br>(iii) **~~Details of any requests to co-ordinate the forward work programme, where appropriate, with Development Agencies and Network Utility Operators.~~**<br>(iv) **~~The record shall be submitted to the Council for information ten (10) working days prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work.~~** | |
| **All** | **3** | **Designation Review**<br>**~~Pre-construction review~~**<br>(a) **~~The Requiring Authority shall, at five (5) yearly intervals from the confirmation of the designation, undertake a review of the designation. The purpose of the review is to keep stakeholders updated on progress with implementation of the project, and to enable areas of designated land to be removed from the designation if identified as being no longer required.~~**<br>(b) **~~The review shall involve affected landowners and occupiers and:~~**<br>~~(i)~~ **~~provide an update on the progress or effort made to give effect to the designation and the anticipated date for implementation;~~**<br>~~(ii)~~ **~~review the extent of the designation to identify any areas of designated land that are no longer required for the designation; and~~**<br>~~(iii)~~ **~~be made publicly available on the project website and be made available to the Council.~~**<br>**~~Post-construction review~~**<br>**(a)** As soon as reasonably practicable**~~, but no later than six (6) months,~~** following **~~the~~** Completion of Construction the Requiring Authority shall:<br>(i) review the extent of the designation to identify any areas of designated land that it no longer requires for the on-going operation, maintenance or mitigation of effects of the Project; and<br>(i) give notice to the Council in accordance with section 182 of the RMA for the removal of those parts of the designation identified above. | **Reject pre-construction review.**<br>The Panel has recommended the inclusion of a pre-construction review condition. NZTA rejects this recommendation.<br>NZTA explained why such a condition is unnecessary in its closing submissions[4]; in particular:<br>• Section 79 of the RMA requires the Council to undertake a review of the District Plan every 10 years, which provides an appropriate opportunity for a Requiring Authority to review the need for a designation.<br>• The lapse periods are based on long-term implementation timeframes and a periodic review could create an expectation for a shorter timeframe than is the case.<br>• The project website will be established, as soon as reasonably practicable, and within 6 months of the designation inclusion in the AUP, to provide landowners, occupiers and the community updates (if any) on the Projects.<br>• The requirement to undertake a periodic review across all designations (including |

[4] Closing legal submissions of Requiring Authority, dated 24 November 2023, at [4.35 – 4.44]

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | others within the region) would be an inefficient imposition on public funds that could otherwise be allocated to priority projects.<br>• The process to consider requests for s 176 consent to work within the designation will inherently prompt NZTA to confirm its ongoing need for the designation over a particular site.<br>**Amend post-construction review.**<br>The Panel has recommended that the post-construction review occur no later than six months following the Completion of Construction. NZTA rejects this recommendation and amends the condition to remove reference to the six-month timeframe.<br>Flexibility is needed in the timing for any post-construction designation review as the roll back process is subject to third party actions and other factors that influence timeframes.[5] |
| **S1**<br>**S2**<br>**S3** | **4** | **Network Utility Operators and Auckland Council (Section 176 Approval)**<br>(a) Prior to the start of Construction Works, Network Utility Operators with existing infrastructure and Auckland Council in relation to parks will not require written consent under section 176 of the RMA for the following activities:<br>**…**<br>(ii) minor renewal works to existing network utilities **~~and/~~**or parks necessary for the on-going provision or security of supply of network utility operations **~~and/~~**or parks **<u>operations</u>**;<br>… | **Amendment by NZTA**<br>Amendments in clause (ii) to improve clarity of the condition including adding the word "operations".<br>Amendments in clause (iv) to clarify the nature of the effects referred to, and to remove the reference to parks given the potential nature or scale of activities that could risk preventing or hindering future work in the designation. Consent to upgrade park facilities can be requested under section 176 for these activities in accordance with normal process. |

[5] Rebuttal evidence of Alastair Lovell, dated 8 September 2023 and adopted by Deepak Rama [4.1 – 4.4].

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | (iv) the upgrade and replacement of existing network utilities **~~and/or parks~~** in the same location with the same or similar effects **<u>on the work authorised by the designation</u>** as the existing utility **~~and/or park~~**.<br>**…** | This provides an opportunity for NZTA and Auckland Council to engage on the proposed work, including opportunities for mutually beneficial outcomes. |
| **KS**<br>**HS** | **4** | **Network Utility Operators (Section 176 Approval)**<br>(a) Prior to the start of Construction Works, Network Utility Operators with existing infrastructure **~~located within the designation~~** will not require written consent under section 176 of the RMA for the following activities:<br>(i) operation, maintenance and **~~urgent~~** repair works;<br>(ii) minor renewal works to existing network utilities **<u>necessary</u>** for the on-going provision or security of supply of network utility operations;<br>**…**<br>(iv) the upgrade and replacement of existing network utilities in the same location with the same or similar effects **<u>on the work authorised by the designation</u>** as the existing utility. | **Amendment by NZTA to clause (a)(i)**<br>The words "located within the designation" have been deleted, as all conditions and the section 176 RMA requirements only apply to works within the designation.<br>The deletion of 'urgent' was raised through engagement with network utility operators who indicated that most repair works are likely to be non-urgent and should be allowed to proceed without written consent under section 176. NZTA consider this reasonable to enable the ongoing operation of network utilities.<br>**Amendment by NZTA to clause (a)(ii)**<br>The amendment improves the clarity of the condition.<br>**Amendment by NZTA to clause (a)(iv)**<br>Amendments in clause (iv) to clarify the nature of the effects referred to. |
| **All** | **6** | **Management Plans**<br>(a) Any management plan shall:<br>(i) Be prepared and implemented in accordance with the relevant management plan condition **~~and to achieve its objective or purpose~~**;<br>…<br>(iv) Summarise comments received from Mana Whenua and **~~other~~** stakeholders as required by the relevant management plan condition, along with a summary of where comments have:<br>**…** | **Reject amendment to (i)**<br>The Panel recommends including "and to achieve its objective or purpose". NZTA rejects this addition as the individual management plan conditions already include such requirements.<br>**Amendment by NZTA** |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Remove "other" as the role of Mana Whenua in future project delivery will differ from external stakeholders. |
| **All** | **8** | **Network Integration Management Plan (NIMP)**<br>(b) The objective of the NIMP is to identify how the Project will integrate with the planned transport network in the North West growth area to achieve an effective, efficient and safe land transport system. To achieve this objective, the NIMP shall include details of the:<br>…<br>(ii) Sequencing of the Projects with the planned transport network, including design, management and operational matters **~~and whether Designation S1 can practicably be implemented prior to Designations S2 and S3 in order to minimise adverse effects on SH16 and the Kumeū Town Centre.~~** | **Reject addition to clause (b)(ii)**<br>The Panel recommends additional wording in relation to sequencing of designations S1, S2 and S3. NZTA rejects this recommendation because the potential adverse effects on the operation of SH16 Main Road and Kumeū Town Centre have been assessed and will be appropriately managed by the existing conditions, including the NIMP and the CTMP. The relative timing for implementation of work in designations S1, S2 and S3 will depend on factors such as growth, wider transport and land use planning, and availability of funding [6]. |
| **S2**<br>**S3** | **8A** | **Stakeholder Communication and Engagement Management Plan (SCEMP)**<br>(b) The objective of the SCEMP is to identify how the public and Stakeholders will be engaged with throughout Construction Works. To achieve the objective, the SCEMP shall include:<br>**…**<br>(iv) the contact details for the Project Liaison Person. These details shall be on the Project website, or equivalent virtual information source, and prominently displayed at the main entrance(s) to the site(s);<br>**~~(v) the procedures for ensuring that there is a contact person available for the duration of Construction Works, for public enquiries or complaints about the Construction Works;~~**<br>(vii) methods to **<u>manage</u>** **~~avoid, remedy or mitigate~~** the potential loss of visibility from public spaces, and **~~physical~~** severance to businesses in the Business - Town Centre Zones, informed | **Reject amendment to (vii)**<br>The Panel recommends that "avoid, remedy or mitigate" is more appropriate than "manage" in clause (b)(vii). NZTA rejects this amendment. The objective of the SCEMP is to identify how the public and stakeholders will be engaged with throughout Construction Works. In this context, "manage" is more appropriate.<br>**Reject insertion of "physical" in (vii)**<br>The Panel recommends that severance is limited to "physical" severance. NZTA rejects the addition of "physical" as it is considered that severance should encompass all forms of potential severance, i.e. visual and physical.<br>**Reject addition of clause (xi)** |

[6] Primary Evidence of Deepak Rama, dated 2 August 2023 [4.1] [4.5] and Primary Evidence of Joe Phillips, dated 2 August 2023, at [1.4], [6.1 – 6.14].

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | by engagement undertaken in accordance with (i) and (ii) above. These methods could include (but not be limited to) customer access arrangements, temporary wayfinding and signage;<br>**…**<br>~~(xi) provision for a hardship fund to compensate or offset business costs or losses arising from the Construction Works on the operation of the business.~~<br>(c) Any SCEMP prepared for a Stage of Work shall be submitted to the Council for information a minimum of ten ~~(10)~~ working days prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. | The Panel proposes an additional clause relating to a hardship fund. NZTA rejects this recommendation. It is not mandated by current statutory requirements. Compensation matters are provided for by the PWA.<br>**Accept addition to clause (c)**<br>The Panel recommended adding "minimum" into clause (c), which NZTA accepts.<br>**Amendment by NZTA to clause (b)(v)**<br>NZTA removes clause (b)(v) because the content duplicates requirements in (b)(iv) and is therefore unnecessary. |
| **S1**<br>**<u>HS</u>**<br>**KS** | **8A** | **Stakeholder Communication and Engagement Management Plan (SCEMP)**<br>(b) The objective of the SCEMP is to identify how the public and Stakeholders will be engaged with throughout Construction Works. To achieve the objective, the SCEMP shall include:<br>**…**<br>(iv) the contact details for the Project Liaison Person. These details shall be on the Project website, or equivalent virtual information source, and prominently displayed at the main entrance(s) to the site(s);<br>~~(v) the procedures for ensuring that there is a contact person available for the duration of Construction Works, for public enquiries or complaints about the Construction Works;~~<br>…<br>(c) Any SCEMP prepared for a Stage of Work shall be submitted to the Council for information ~~with the Outline Plan~~ **<u>a minimum of</u> <u>ten working days prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work</u>**. | **Amendment by NZTA to clause (b)(v)**<br>NZTA removes clause (b)(v) because the content duplicates requirements in (b)(iv).<br>**Amendment by NZTA to clause (c)**<br>NZTA has amended clause (c) consistent with the approach outlined in its written closing submissions. That is, that the SCEMP will be provided separate to the Outline Plan process and prepared prior to the start of construction. The proposed Stakeholder Communication and Engagement condition requires that the identification of stakeholders, directly affected properties and engagement methods must take place at least six months before detailed design, and it is a record of those matters that must be submitted at the Outline Plan stage (not the SCEMP). Previous wording was retained in error.<br>NZTA has also adopted the inclusion of "minimum" to clause (c), to be consistent with |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | the Panel's recommendation for the other NORs. |
| **All** | **[NEW]** | **Network Utilities Integration**<br>**[relocated from NUMP into new condition]**<br>The Requiring Authority shall consult with Network Utility Operators during the detailed design phase to consider opportunities to enable, or not preclude, the development of new network utility facilities including access to power and ducting within the Project, where practicable to do so. The consultation undertaken, opportunities considered, and whether or not they have been incorporated into the detailed design, shall be summarised in the **~~NUMP~~** **<u>Outline Plan(s) prepared for the Project</u>**. | **Amendment by NZTA**<br>NZTA has relocated this clause from the NUMP condition to form a standalone condition and consequentially updated that consultation undertaken, opportunities considered, and whether or not they have been incorporated into the detailed design, be summarised in the Outline Plan (not the NUMP). This is because the condition relates to opportunities in the design phase, whereas the NUMP primarily applies to the construction phase. |
| **S1**<br>**S2**<br>**S3** | **8B** | **Open Space Management Plan (OSMP)**<br>…<br>(c) The objective of the OSMP is to minimise, as far as practicable, adverse effects on the recreation amenity of Fred Taylor Park resulting from the Project. To achieve the objective, the OSMP shall include details of:<br>…<br>(iii) (iv) how matters raised by Auckland Council Parks and relevant stakeholders **~~identified pursuant to condition 3B~~** have been incorporated into the OSMP, and where matters have not been incorporated, the reasons why not. | **Accept amendment to (c)(iv)**<br>NZTA accepts the removal of the word 'key' in reference to stakeholders in clause (c)(iv).<br>**Amendments by NZTA**<br>NZTA has also amended the condition to remove reference to Condition 3B in clause (c)(iv). The OSMP will be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person, who is best positioned to advise on who the relevant stakeholders are, and how matters raised may be addressed. |
| **S1** | **9** | **Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan (ULDMP)**<br>**[note some clauses have been re-located in clean sets]**<br>…<br>(c) **<u>Relevant</u>** stakeholders **~~identified through the Condition 3B~~** shall be invited to participate in the development of the ULDMP at least six (6) months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work. | **Accept (c) in part - removal of 'key'**<br>The Panel recommends deleting the word "key" in front of Stakeholders. NZTA accepts the removal of "key" in clause (c) and replace with "relevant". The reference to "relevant" stakeholders in the conditions is required because at this stage of a project, engagement should be focussed on those Stakeholders |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | (d) The ULDMP shall be prepared in general accordance with:<br>…<br>(iii) **~~Waka Kotahi~~ <u>NZTA</u>** Landscape Guidelines (201**~~3~~<u>8</u>**) or any subsequent updated version; and<br>…<br>(e) To achieve the objective **<u>set out in Condition 9(1)</u>**, the ULDMP(s) shall provide details of how the project:<br>…<br>(f) The ULDMP(s) shall include:<br>...<br>(iii) landscape and urban design details – that cover the following:<br>...<br>E. Landscape treatment **<u>and planting</u>** of permanent stormwater control wetlands and swales …<br>…<br>H. Historic heritage places with reference to the HHMP **<u>(Condition 21)</u>**;<br>I. Reinstatement of construction and site compound areas;<br>J. Reinstatement of features to be retained such as:<br>a. boundary features;<br>b. landscaping;<br>c. driveways;<br>d. accessways; **<u>and</u>**<br>**e.** fences **~~and~~**<br>**~~f. site utilities.~~**<br>(g) The ULDMP shall also include the following planting details and maintenance requirements:<br>(i) planting design details including: | considered relevant to the Stage of Work. The ULDMP will be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person who will be best qualified to advise on who the relevant stakeholders are that should be invited to participate in the development of the ULDMP.<br>**Reject (f)(iii)(j) - site utilities**<br>The Panel recommends including "site utilities" as an example of features to be re-instated. NZTA rejects the addition of "site utilities" in (f)(iii)(j) as the list of features is inclusive, so it is unnecessary to list every feature. Further, the reinstatement of site utilities is already provided for under the PWA.<br>**Reject (g)(iii) - irrigation and plant replacement**<br>The Panel recommends including "irrigation" and "plant replacement (due to theft or plants dying)" into the list of detailed specifications. NZTA rejects this recommendation as the list of features is inclusive, so it is unnecessary to list every feature. Further, plant replacement is already addressed in the lead in sentence that captures "planting details and maintenance requirements". Maintenance of landscaping will also be guided by the NZTA Landscape Guidelines, which the ULDMP will be prepared in general accordance with.<br>**Accept removal of advice note - front yard setback.**<br>The Panel recommends deleting the advice note to the ULDMP. NZTA accepts the deletion of the advice note.<br>**Amendment by NZTA** |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | ...<br>~~d. **Planting of stormwater wetlands**~~<br>e. identification of **~~vegetation to be retained and~~** any planting requirements under **<u>the Ecological Management Plan (Condition 21B) and Tree Management Plan (Condition 22)</u>** **~~Conditions 21B and 22~~**;<br>.<br>~~f. **re-instatement planting of construction and site compound areas as appropriate.**~~<br>…<br>(ii) detailed specifications relating to the following:<br>a. weed control and clearance;<br>b. pest animal management (to support plant establishment);<br>c. ground preparation (top soiling and decompaction);<br>d. mulching; **<u>and</u>**<br>e. plant sourcing and planting including hydroseeding and grassing, and use of eco-sourced species;<br>~~**f. irrigation and**~~<br>~~**g. plant replacement (due to theft or plants dying)**~~ | NZTA has amended the condition to improve clarity and to remove reference to Condition 3B in clause (c). The ULDMP is prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person, who is best positioned to advise on who the relevant stakeholders are.<br>NZTA has also removed the reference to "planting of stormwater wetlands" in clause (g)(i)(d) and instead inserted "planting" in clause (f)(iii)(E) to avoid duplication.<br>An incorrect date in the NZTA Landscape Guidelines has been corrected.<br>The reference to "re-instatement planting of construction and site compound areas as appropriate" is deleted as these matters are already addressed under clause (f)(iii)(J).<br>In the clean set of conditions in Appendices A – D, the ULDMP condition has been separated into three separate conditions and some clauses relocated in the clean sets for ease of implementation. The phrase "set out in Condition 9(1)" has been added (with updated numbering in the clean sets) to maintain a link between the three ULDMP conditions. |
| **All except S1** | **9** | **ULDMP, see above – and:**<br>(f) The ULDMP(s) shall include:<br>(i) a concept plan – which depicts the overall landscape and urban design concept, and explain the rationale for the landscape and urban design proposals;<br>(ii) developed design concepts, including principles for walking and cycling facilities and public transport; and | **Amendment by NZTA**<br>NZTA has added the words "shaped to a natural profile where practicable and appropriate to the surrounding context" into clause (f)(iii)(A), to be consistent with the condition set for NoR S1 and for the reasons explained in closing submissions.[7] |

[7] Closing legal submissions of Requiring Authority, dated 24 November 2023, at [24.2].

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and underlined** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | (iii) landscape and urban design details – that cover the following:<br>A. Road design – elements such as intersection form, carriageway gradient and associated earthworks contouring including cut and fill batters**, shaped to a natural profile where practicable and appropriate to the surrounding context,** and the interface with adjacent land uses and existing roads (including slip lanes), benching, spoil disposal sites, median width and treatment, roadside width and treatment;<br>… | |
| **All** | | **Flood Hazard**<br>For the purpose of Condition 10:<br>…<br>**(d)** Flood prone area – means **~~a~~** potential ponding area**s** that may flood and commonly comprise**~~d~~** of topographical depression areas. The**~~se~~ areas** can occur naturally or as a result of constructed features **~~which act as embankments when stormwater outlets are blocked. Flood prone areas typically include depressions formed by road/railway/motorway embankments built across natural gullies~~.**<br>… | **Accept removal of ARI in definitions**<br>The Panel recommends deleting the definition of ARI. The Panel is correct that this is not a term that is subsequently used in the flood hazard condition and its deletion is accepted by NZTA.<br>**Amendment by NZTA to the definition of flood prone area**<br>NZTA is amending the definition of "flood prone area" to provide additional clarification and to be consistent with the Auckland Council GIS definition. |
| **All** | **10** | **Flood Hazard**<br>(a) The Project shall be designed to achieve the following flood risk outcomes:<br>(i) no increase in flood levels in a 1% AEP event for existing authorised habitable floors that are already subject to flooding or have a freeboard **~~of~~** less than 500mm **~~within the designation or upstream or downstream of the designation~~**;<br>~~(ii) no more than a 10% reduction in freeboard in a 1% AEP event for existing authorised habitable floors with a freeboard of over 500mm (to maintain a minimum freeboard of 500mm), within the designation or upstream or downstream of the designation;~~<br>~~(iii)~~ no increase in **flood levels in a** 1% AEP **~~flood levels~~ event** for existing authorised community, commercial, industrial and network utility building floors that are already subject | **Reject amendments to condition**<br>The Panel has recommended changes to the flood hazard condition to align with the Healthy Waters version of the conditions along with some amendments. NZTA rejects these changes and (except for the amendment discussed below) retains the version of the condition proposed in its Memorandum of Counsel dated 22 December 2023 for the |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and underlined** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | to flooding or have a freeboard ~~of~~ less than 300mm ~~within the designation or upstream or downstream of the designation;~~<br><br>~~(iv) no more than a 10% reduction in freeboard in a 1% AEP event for existing authorised community, commercial, industrial and network utility building floors with a freeboard of over 300mm (to maintain a minimum freeboard of 300mm) within the designation or upstream or downstream of the designation;~~<br><br>~~(v) no increase in a 1% AEP flood level, except where the increase in level occurs within a well-defined stream cross-section and the increase will not increase the flood plain extent;~~<br><br>~~(vi) existing or new overland flow paths shall be diverted away from private properties and discharge to a suitable location so that there is no increase in flood levels in a 1% AEP event downstream. Overland flow paths shall be kept free of obstructions~~;<br><br>(vii) **Maximum of 50mm increase in water level in a 1% AEP event outside and adjacent to the designation boundaries between the pre and post Project scenarios; and**<br><br>~~(viii) no new flood prone areas; and~~<br><br>(ix) no increase of ~~f~~**F**lood ~~h~~**H**azard for **the** main ~~vehicle~~ access to authorised habitable dwellings existing at time the Outline Plan is submitted. The assessment shall be undertaken for the 1% AEP rainfall event.<br><br>Where Flood Hazard is:<br><br>• velocity x depth **greater than or equal to** ~~>=~~ 0.6 or<br><br>• depth **greater than** ~~>~~ 0.5m, or<br><br>• Velocity **greater than** ~~>~~ 2m/s.<br><br>(b) Compliance with **this** condition ~~(a)~~ shall be demonstrated in the Outline Plan, which shall include flood modelling of**:**<br><br>(i) the pre-Project and post-Project 1% AEP flood levels (for Maximum Probable Development land use ~~and including~~ **with allowances for** climate change)**;** ~~.~~<br><br>~~(ii) proposed horizontal and vertical alignments of the road design; and~~ | reasons explained in both that Memorandum and Closing Submissions.[8]<br><br>**Amendment by NZTA to clauses (a)(iii) and (ix)**<br><br>NZTA is amending these clauses to improve clarity, including to clarify the meaning of flood hazard by explaining the symbols used in the condition, and to make it clear that the requirement is not restricted to "vehicle" access.<br><br>**Amendment by NZTA to clause (a)(viii)**<br><br>NZTA deletes the clause stating "no new flood prone areas".<br><br>**Amendment by NZTA to clause (b)**<br><br>NZTA amends clause (b) to improve clarity in how the flood modelling will be undertaken.<br><br>**Amendment by NZTA to clause (c)**<br><br>On reflection, NZTA amends clause (c) to clarify how confirmation will be provided that any necessary approvals have been obtained. |

[8] Closing Legal Submissions of Requiring Authority, dated 24 November 2023, at [15.3] – [15.15]; Memorandum of Counsel dated 22 December 2023, at [7.1 – 7.5].

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and underlined** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | ~~(iii) all stormwater, drainage and mitigation infrastructure proposed to service the road construction.~~<br><br>~~This modelling shall be submitted to Auckland Council Healthy Waters (or its equivalent) for review and confirmation that it can adequately demonstrate compliance with the condition.~~<br><br>(c) Where the above outcomes can be achieved through alternative measures outside of the designation such as flood stop banks, flood walls, raising existing authorised habitable floor level and new overland flow paths or varied through agreement with the relevant landowner, ~~the Outline Plan shall include~~ confirmation **shall be provided** that any necessary landowner and statutory approvals have been obtained for that work or alternative outcome.<br><br>(d) ~~The capacity of the designation's stormwater management network to drain surface water from private properties shall not be reduced or if reduced is appropriately accommodated by other means.~~<br><br>~~Advice Notes:~~<br><br>~~(i) For the Strategic Network, due to the extensive flooding known to occur within Kumeū – Huapai, the linear nature of the designation, and the potential timeframe between granting of the designation and construction it is required that the Requiring Authority confirms an appropriate modelling with Auckland Council Healthy Waters (or its equivalent) when commencing the detailed design. This will ensure compliance with any relevant National and Regional Codes of Practice and specifications are complied with.~~<br><br>(ii) ~~Consultation with Auckland Council Healthy Waters (or its equivalent) to identify opportunities for collaboration on catchment improvement projects shall be carried out at the detailed design stage.~~ | |
| **S1**<br>**S3**<br>**KS**<br>**HS** | **11** | **Existing property access**<br><br>~~(a) Where existing property vehicle access which exists at the time the Outline Plan is submitted is proposed to be altered by the project, the Requiring Authority shall consult with the directly affected landowners and occupiers regarding the required changes. The Outline Plan shall demonstrate how safe efficient and effective access to the transport corridor, and on-site parking and manoeuvring will be provided, unless otherwise agreed with the affected landowner.~~<br><br>**Prior to submission of the Outline Plan, consultation shall be undertaken with landowners and occupiers whose vehicle access to their property will be altered by the project. The Outline Plan shall demonstrate how safe reconfigured or alternate access will be provided, unless otherwise addressed with the affected landowner.** | **Amendment by NZTA**<br><br>NZTA has revised the wording of this condition to improve clarity and add the phrase "reconfigured or alternate access".<br><br>**Reject insertion of "on-site parking and manoeuvring"**<br><br>The Panel recommend amending this condition so that it reads "… safe efficient and effective access to the transport corridor, and on-site parking and manoeuvring will be provided…" NZTA rejects the addition of **"***on-* |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | *site parking and manoeuvring*" as the insertions are unnecessary for the reasons provided in the Closing Legal Submissions. [9]<br><br>**Reject insertion of "efficient and effective"**<br><br>NZTA rejects the addition of "efficient and effective access to the transport corridor". It is unnecessary for the reasons explained in Closing Legal Submissions and the evidence of Mr Phillips.[10]<br><br>NZTA has also changed 'agreed' to 'addressed' as changes to access may not require a formal agreement; this may depend on the nature of the change and whether land acquisition is required under the PWA. |
| **S2** | **11** | ~~(a) **Where existing property vehicle access from roads that are not a state highway, which exists at the time the Outline Plan is submitted is proposed to be altered by the project, the Rrequiring Aauthority shall consult with the directly affected landowners and occupiers regarding the required changes. The Outline Plan shall demonstrate how safe, efficient and effective access to the transport corridor, and on-site parking and manoeuvring, will be provided, unless otherwise agreed with the affected landowner.**~~<br><br>~~(a)~~ **<u>Prior to submission of the Outline Plan, consultation shall be undertaken with landowners and occupiers whose vehicle access to their property from roads that are not a state highway will be altered by the project. The Outline Plan shall demonstrate how safe reconfigured or alternate access will be provided, unless otherwise addressed with the affected landowner.</u>** | See explanation in line item above. |

[9] Closing Legal Submissions of Requiring Authority, dated 24 November 2023, at [14.8]
[10] Closing Legal Submissions of Requiring Authority, dated 24 November 2023, at [13.10] and [14.8]; and Rebuttal evidence of Joe Phillips, dated 8 September 2023 [4.30] and [4.34].

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| **All** | **12** | **Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP)**<br>**…**<br>(b) The objective of the CEMP is to set out the management procedures and construction methods to be undertaken to, avoid, remedy or mitigate any adverse effects associated with Construction Works as far as practicable. To achieve the objective, the CEMP shall include:<br>…<br>(iv) details of the proposed construction yards including temporary screening when adjacent to Residential zones;<br>(v) details of the proposed **~~locations of refuelling activities and~~** construction lighting;<br>…<br>(x) **<u>location and</u>** procedures for the refuelling and maintenance of plant and equipment to avoid discharges of fuels or lubricants to watercourses;<br>… | **Accept addition to clause (iv)**<br>The Panel recommends amending "residential areas" to "residential zones" in clause (b)(iv), which is accepted by NZTA.<br>**Amendment by NZTA**<br>NZTA has made administrative amendments to condition 12(b) to separate out locations of refuelling activities from clause (v) to clause (x). |
| **All** | **15** | **Cultural Monitoring Plan (CMP)**<br>(a) Prior to the start of Construction Works, a CMP shall be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person(s) identified in collaboration with Mana Whenua.<br>(b) The objective of the CMP is to identify methods for undertaking cultural monitoring to assist with management of any cultural effects during Construction Works. **<u>To achieve the objective,</u>** t~~T~~he CMP shall include:<br>**…** | **Amendment by NZTA**<br>Minor wording improvement, consistent with other management plan conditions. |
| **<u>All</u>**<br>**~~S1, S3, HS, KS~~** | **16** | **Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP)**<br>(a) A CTMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work.<br>(b) The objective of the CTMP is to avoid, remedy or mitigate, as far as practicable, adverse construction traffic effects. To achieve this objective, the CTMP shall include:<br>…<br>(vi) methods to maintain **~~vehicle~~** access**~~, parking and manoeuvring~~** to and within property and/or private roads where practicable, or to provide alternative **~~vehicle access, parking and manoeuvring~~** arrangements when it will not be**<u>, including details of how access is</u>** | **Reject additions to clause (vi) "vehicle" access**<br>The Panel recommends inserting "vehicle" in front of "access". NZTA does not intend to limit the CTMP to vehicle access and rejects this recommendation. This acknowledges access considerations for both vehicular and active modes e.g. walking and cycling. |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and underlined** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | **managed for loading and unloading of goods.** Engagement with landowners or occupiers whose access**~~, parking and manoeuvring~~** is directly affected shall be undertaken in accordance with the SCEMP;<br>**~~(vii) details of how the loading and unloading of goods will be provided for;~~**<br>(viii) the management approach to loads on heavy vehicles, including covering loads of fine material, the use of wheel-wash facilities at site exit points and the timely removal of any material deposited or spilled on public roads;<br>(ix) methods that will be undertaken to communicate traffic management measures to affected road users (e.g. residents /public /stakeholders /emergency services);<br>**~~(x) auditing, monitoring and reporting requirements relating to traffic management activities shall be undertaken in accordance with the New Zealand Guide to Temporary Traffic Management or any subsequent version.~~**<br>(xi) details of minimum network performance parameters during the construction phase, including any measures to monitor compliance with the performance parameters; and<br>(xii) details of any measures proposed to be implemented in the event of thresholds identified in (xi) being exceeded.<br>(c) **Auditing, monitoring and reporting requirements relating to traffic management activities shall be undertaken in accordance with the New Zealand Guide to Temporary Traffic Management (April 2023) or any subsequent version.** | **Reject additions to clause (vi) "parking and manoeuvring" to and within property … "parking and manoeuvring" arrangements**<br>The Panel recommends including references to "parking and manoeuvring" into the CTMP. NZTA does not accept that the CTMP should require or indeed will be able to in all instances maintain parking and manoeuvring areas within private property.<br>Any changes to internal parking and manoeuvring areas on sites will be considered where relevant as part of the PWA process where land acquisition is required.<br>**Amendment by NZTA to clause (vi) and (vii)**<br>NZTA has relocated the reference to the loading and unloading of goods from a standalone clause to clause (vi) to recognise the link between access and loading areas, and has corrected a reference from Condition 3B to the SCEMP. It has also deleted the word "access" in the requirement to provide alternative arrangements where access will not be maintained, to improve readability of the condition.<br>**Amendment by NZTA to clause (c) and (b)(x)**<br>NZTA has relocated clause (c) from (b)(x) and clarified the date of the Guide. |
| **~~S2~~** | | **~~Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP)~~**<br>~~(a) A CTMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work.~~<br>~~(b) The objective of the CTMP is to avoid, remedy or mitigate, as far as practicable, adverse construction traffic effects. To achieve this objective, the CTMP shall include:~~ | See above line item and:<br>**Reject amendments to CTMP**<br>The Panel has recommended an additional clause (ii) for NoR S2. NZTA rejects this additional clause because it is not necessary. |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | ~~(i) methods to manage the effects of temporary traffic management activities on traffic;~~<br>~~(ii) methods to maintain road capacity for through traffic, equivalent to one through lane of traffic in each direction, at all times during construction, excepting the intersections of SH16 Main Road with Access Road and Harikoa Street, where two through lanes is required in each direction to maintain capacity;~~<br>~~(iii) measures to ensure the safety of all transport users;~~<br>~~(iv) the estimated numbers, frequencies, routes and timing of traffic movements, including any specific non-working or non-movement hours to manage vehicular and pedestrian traffic near educational facilities or to manage traffic congestion;~~<br>~~(v) site access routes and access points for heavy vehicles, the size and location of parking areas for plant, construction vehicles and the vehicles of workers and visitors;~~<br>~~(vi) identification of detour routes and other methods to ensure the safe management and maintenance of traffic flows, including public transport services, pedestrians and cyclists;~~<br>~~(vii) methods to maintain vehicle access, parking and manoeuvring to and within property and/or private roads where practicable, or to provide alternative vehicle access, parking and manoeuvring arrangements when it will not be. Engagement with landowners or occupiers whose access, parking and manoeuvring is directly affected shall be undertaken in accordance with Condition 3B;~~<br>~~(viii) details of how the loading and unloading of goods will be provided for;~~<br>~~(ix) the management approach to loads on heavy vehicles, including covering loads of fine material, the use of wheel wash facilities at site exit points and the timely removal of any material deposited or spilled on public roads;~~<br>~~(x) methods that will be undertaken to communicate traffic management measures to affected road users (e.g. residents /public /stakeholders /emergency services);~~<br>~~(xi) auditing, monitoring and reporting requirements relating to traffic management activities shall be undertaken in accordance with the New Zealand Guide to Temporary Traffic Management or any subsequent version;~~<br>~~(xii) details of minimum network performance parameters during the construction phase, including any measures to monitor compliance with the performance parameters; and~~ | A requirement to consider methods to maintain road capacity is already captured within the CTMP under clauses (i) and (xi). The evidence of Mr Phillip's states that maintaining a lane each way would generally be necessary but not 'at all times' and that there is sufficient space within the overlapping designations for NoR S2 and S3 to do so.[11]<br><br>The traffic management detail will be appropriately addressed at the time of implementation by the Suitably Qualified Person preparing the CTMP. This will be based on the transport environment at the time including any other transport improvements that have been implemented between now and then. This is also a consideration under the NIMP.[12] |

[11] Primary Evidence of Joe Phillips, dated 2 August 2023, at [12.62](b).
[12] Rebuttal Evidence of Joe Phillips, dated 8 September 2023, at [4.11] – [4.19].

<table>
<tr><th>Designation</th><th>Condition number</th><th>Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners<br>(additions to conditions are in bold and <u>underlined</u> and rejections are in bold and ~~strikethrough~~)</th><th>Reason for modifications</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>(xiii) ~~details of any measures proposed to be implemented in the event of thresholds identified in (xii) being exceeded.~~</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>All</td><td>17</td><td>Construction Noise Standards<br>(a) Construction noise shall be measured and assessed in accordance with NZS6803:1999 Acoustics – Construction Noise and shall comply with the noise standards set out in the following table as far as practicable:<br><br>Table 17.1: Construction noise standards
<table>
<tr><th>Day of week</th><th>Time period</th><th>$L_{Aeq(15min)}$</th><th>$L_{Afmax}$</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Occupied activity sensitive to noise</td></tr>
<tr><td>Weekday</td><td>0630h - 0730h</td><td>55 dB</td><td>75 dB</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>0730h - 1800h</td><td>70 dB</td><td>85 dB</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>1800h - 2000h</td><td>65 dB</td><td>80 dB</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>2000h - 0630h</td><td>45 dB</td><td>75 dB</td></tr>
<tr><td>Saturday</td><td>0630h - 0730h</td><td><u>54</u>5 dB</td><td>75 dB</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>0730h - 1800h</td><td>70 dB</td><td>85 dB</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>1800h - 2000h</td><td>45 dB</td><td>75 dB</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>2000h - 0630h</td><td>45 dB</td><td>75 dB</td></tr>
<tr><td>Sunday and Public Holidays</td><td>0630h - 0730h</td><td>45 dB</td><td>75 dB</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>0730h - 1800h</td><td>55 dB</td><td>85 dB</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>1800h - 2000h</td><td>45 dB</td><td>75 dB</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>2000h - 0630h</td><td>45 dB</td><td>75 dB</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Other occupied buildings</td></tr>
</table></td><td>Amendment by NZTA<br>NZTA has amended the 55dB reference in Saturday 06:30 – 07:30 to 45dB to correct an error.</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Designation</th><th>Condition number</th><th>Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners<br>(additions to conditions are in bold and <u>underlined</u> and rejections are in bold and ~~strikethrough~~)</th><th>Reason for modifications</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>
<table>
<tr><td>All</td><td>0730h – 1800h<br>1800h – 0730h</td><td>70 dB<br>75 dB</td><td></td></tr>
</table>
b. Where compliance with the noise standards set out in Table 17.1 is not practicable, the methodology in Condition 20 shall apply.
</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>All</td><td>18</td><td>
Construction Vibration Standards<br>
(a) Construction vibration shall be measured in accordance with ISO 4866:2010 Mechanical vibration and shock – Vibration of fixed structures – Guidelines for the measurement of vibrations and evaluation of their effects on structures and shall comply with the vibration standards set out in Table 18.1 as far as practicable.<br>
Table 18.1: Construction Vibration ~~criteria~~ <u>Standards</u>
<table>
<tr><th>Receiver</th><th>Details</th><th>Category A*</th><th>Category B*</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Occupied Activities sensitive to noise</td><td>Night-time 2000h - 0630h</td><td>0.3mm/s ppv</td><td>1mm/s ppv</td></tr>
<tr><td>Daytime 0630h - 2000h</td><td>1mm/s ppv</td><td>5mm/s ppv</td></tr>
<tr><td>Other occupied buildings</td><td>Daytime 0630h - 2000h</td><td>2mm/s ppv</td><td>5mm/s ppv</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">All other buildings</td><td>At all other times<br>Vibration transient</td><td>5mm/s ppv</td><td>BS 5228-2**<br>Table B2</td></tr>
<tr><td>At all other times<br>Vibration continuous</td><td>5mm/s ppv</td><td>BS 5228-2**<br>50% of Table B2 values</td></tr>
</table>
* Refer to ~~Waka Kotahi~~ <u>NZTA</u> State highway construction and maintenance noise and vibration guide for further explanation regarding Category A and B criteria
</td><td>Amendment by NZTA<br>Minor administrative amendments.</td></tr>
</table>

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | ***BS 5228-2:2009 'Code of practice for noise and vibration control on construction and open sites – Part 2: Vibration'*<br>(b) Where compliance with the vibration standards set out in Table 18.1 is not practicable, the methodology in Condition 20 shall apply.<br>(c) If measured or predicted vibration from construction activities exceeds the Category A criteria, a Suitably Qualified Person shall assess and manage construction vibration during those activities.<br>(d) If measured or predicted vibration from construction activities exceeds the Category B criteria those activities must only proceed if vibration effects on affected buildings are assessed, monitored and mitigated by a Suitably Qualified Person. | |
| **<u>All</u>**<br>**~~S1, S2, HS~~** | **19** | **Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP)**<br>…<br>(c) The objective of the CNVMP is to provide a framework for the development and implementation of the Best Practicable Option for the management of construction noise and vibration effects to achieve the construction noise and vibration standards set out in Conditions 17 and 18 to the extent practicable. To achieve **~~this~~ <u>the</u>** objective, the CNVMP shall be prepared in accordance with Annex E2 of the New Zealand Standard NZS6803:1999 'Acoustics – Construction Noise' (NZS6803:1999) **~~and the Waka Kotahi State highway construction and maintenance noise and vibration guide (version 1.1, 2019),~~** and shall as a minimum, address the following:<br>…<br>(v) A hierarchy of management and mitigation options including any requirements to limit night **<u>works</u>** and works during other sensitive times, including Sundays and public holidays as far as practicable;<br>…<br>(xii) Procedures **<u>and trigger levels</u>** for undertaking building condition surveys before and after works to determine whether any cosmetic or structural damage has occurred as a result of construction vibration;<br>**…** | **Reject specific CNVMP condition for KS and S3**<br>The Panel recommends a different CNVMP condition for S3 and KS that include an additional clause (c)(v) relating to the Huapai Tavern. As explained in the line item below, NZTA rejects the recommendation to include reference to "Huapai Tavern (AUP Schedule 14.1 #00482)" in the CNVMP.<br>**Amendment by NZTA**<br>NZTA has included reference to "trigger levels" at clause (c) as trigger levels are also an important consideration for determining when to undertake building condition surveys. NZTA has also deleted the reference to a 2019 noise and vibration guide that was included in error. NZTA has also made minor editorial amendments to the condition, including to insert the word "works" in (c)(v). |
| **~~S3, KS~~** | **~~19~~** | **~~Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP)~~**<br>~~(a) A CNVMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work.~~<br>~~(b) A CNVMP shall be implemented during the Stage of Work to which it relates.~~ | **Reject the addition of clause (c)(v)**<br>The Panel recommends a different CNVMP condition for S3 and KS that includes an additional clause (c)(v) relating to the Huapai |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | ~~(c) The objective of the CNVMP is to provide a framework for the development and implementation of the Best Practicable Option for the management of construction noise and vibration effects to achieve the construction noise and vibration standards set out in Conditions 17 and 18 to the extent practicable. To achieve this objective, the CNVMP shall be prepared in accordance with Annex E2 of the New Zealand Standard NZS6803:1999 'Acoustics – Construction Noise' (NZS6803:1999) and the Waka Kotahi State highway construction and maintenance noise and vibration guide (version 1.1, 2019), and shall as a minimum, address the following:~~<br>~~(i) A description of the works and anticipated equipment/processes;~~<br>~~(ii) Hours of operation, including times and days when construction activities would occur;~~<br>~~(iii) The construction noise and vibration standards for the project;~~<br>~~(iv) Identification of receivers where noise and vibration standards apply;~~<br>~~(v) Set out the method for monitoring effects on the Huapai Tavern (AUP Schedule 14.1 #00482), to protect historic heritage values including by reference to the HHMP;~~<br>~~(vi) A hierarchy of management and mitigation options including any requirements to limit night and works during other sensitive times, including Sundays and public holidays as far as practicable;~~<br>~~(vii) Methods and frequency for monitoring and reporting on construction noise and vibration;~~<br>~~(viii) Procedures for communication and engagement with nearby residents and stakeholders, including notification of proposed construction activities, the period of construction activities, and management of noise and vibration complaints;~~<br>~~(ix) Contact details of the Project Liaison Person;~~<br>~~(x) Procedures for the regular training of the operators of construction equipment to minimise noise and vibration as well as expected construction site behaviours for all workers;~~<br>~~(xi) Procedures and requirements for the preparation of a Schedule to the CNVMP (Schedule) for those areas where compliance with the noise (Condition 17) and/or vibration standards (Condition 18) for Category A or Category B will not be practicable;~~<br>~~(xii) Identification of trigger levels for undertaking building condition surveys, which shall be below Category B day time levels;~~ | Tavern. NZTA rejects this recommendation. Alongside the archaeological authority process, the relocation of the Huapai Tavern will be managed by the HHMP and NZTA will be required to assess and repair any damage resulting from the relocation process. There are already sufficient controls in other conditions so that effects on the Huapai Tavern will be appropriately assessed and managed; the additional clause is therefore unnecessary. This is addressed in detail in the evidence of Ms Wilkening[13] and is also discussed in the Closing Legal Submissions.[14] |

[13] Rebuttal Evidence of Siiri Wilkening, dated 8 September 2023, at [4.1] – [4.13]
[14] Closing legal submissions of Requiring Authority, dated 24 November 2023, at [20.1] – [20.4].

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | ~~(xiii) Procedures for undertaking building condition surveys before and after works to determine whether any cosmetic or structural damage has occurred as a result of construction vibration;~~<br><br>~~(xiv) Methodology and programme of desktop and field audits and inspections to be undertaken to ensure that CNVMP, Schedules and the best practicable option for management of effects are being implemented; and~~<br><br>~~(xv) Requirements for review and update of the CNVMP.~~ | |
| **All** | **20** | **Schedule to a CNVMP**<br><br>(a) A Schedule to the CNVMP (Schedule) shall be prepared prior to the start of the construction **~~activity~~** to which it relates by a Suitably Qualified Person, in consultation with the owners and occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule **~~to the CNVMP~~,** when:<br><br>…<br><br>(b) The objective of the Schedule is to set out the Best Practicable Option measures to manage noise and/or vibration effects of the construction activity beyond those measures set out in the CNVMP**. <u>To achieve the objective, t</u>~~T~~**he Schedule shall include details such as:<br><br>…<br><br>(c) The Schedule shall be submitted to the Manager for **<u>information</u>** **~~certification~~** at least five (5) working days (except in unforeseen circumstances) in advance of Construction Works that are covered by the scope of the Schedule and shall form part of the CNVMP. **<u>If any comments are received from the Manager, these shall be considered by the Requiring Authority prior to implementation of the Schedule</u>**; **~~and~~**<br><br>(d) Where material changes are made to a Schedule required by this condition, the Requiring Authority shall consult the owners and/or occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule prior to submitting the amended Schedule to the Manager for **<u>information</u>** **~~certification~~** in accordance with (c) above. The amended Schedule shall document the consultation undertaken with those owners and occupiers, and how consultation outcomes have and have not been taken into account. | **Reject "certification" in (c) and (d)**<br><br>The Panel recommends amendments to clauses (c) and (d) including to require that the CNVMP Schedules be certified. NZTA rejects these amendments as certification is only required for material changes to management plans and requiring certification of the CNVMP Schedules is unnecessary for the reasons explained in Closing Legal Submissions and the evidence of Ms Wilkening.[15]<br><br>**Amendment by NZTA**<br><br>NZTA has made minor editorial corrections to the condition. |
| **S1**<br><br>**S2** | **21** | **Historic Heritage Management Plan (HHMP) ~~…~~** | **Amendment by NZTA**<br><br>NZTA has deleted clause (c) because: |

[15] Closing legal submissions of Requiring Authority, dated 24 November 2023, at [16.11]; and Evidence of Siiri Wilkening, dated 8 September 2023, at [7.16].

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and underlined** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| **HS** | | **~~(c) Electronic copies of all historic heritage reports relating to historic heritage investigations (evaluation, excavation and monitoring), shall be submitted to the Manager within 12 months of completion.~~**<br><br>***~~Accidental Discoveries~~***<br><br>**Advice Note:**<br><br>**~~The Requiring Authority is advised of the requirements of Rule E11.6.1 of the AUP for "Accidental Discovery" as they relate to both contaminated soils and heritage items.~~**<br><br>**Accidental Discoveries**<br><br>The requirements for accidental discoveries of heritage items are set out in Rule E11.6.1 of the AUP and in the **~~Waka Kotahi~~ NZTA** Minimum Standard P45 Accidental Archaeological Discovery Specification, or any subsequent version. | • The actions to avoid, remedy and mitigate adverse effects on historic heritage are set out in the HHMP inclusions in 21(b). The HHMP will be submitted as part of the Outline Plan process.<br><br>• Monitoring and reporting actions are inherent in 21(b); it is not necessary to then condition a subsequent administrative process. This deletion is consistent with other management plan conditions (e.g. TMP, CNVMP, EMP) which also include monitoring and reporting actions but do not condition a subsequent administrative process.<br><br>NZTA amends the advice note to remove duplication and improve clarity regarding accidental discoveries. |
| **S3** | **21** | **Historic Heritage Management Plan (HHMP)**<br><br>**…(b)**<br><br>(ix) Methods for avoiding, remedying or **~~mitigation~~ mitigating** adverse effects on historic heritage places and sites within the Designation during Construction Works as far as practicable. These methods shall include, but are not limited to: ....<br><br>**~~…(c) Electronic copies of all historic heritage reports relating to historic heritage investigations (evaluation, excavation and monitoring), shall be submitted to the Manager within 12 months of completion.~~**<br><br>**~~Accidental Discoveries~~**<br><br>**Advice Notes:**<br><br>**~~The Requiring Authority is advised of the requirements of Rule E11.6.1 of the AUP for "Accidental Discovery" as they relate to both contaminated soils and heritage items.~~**<br><br>**Accidental Discoveries** | **Amendment by NZTA**<br><br>NZTA amends "mitigation" to "mitigating", consistent with the wording on other North West NORs.<br><br>See above line item for explanation on (c). |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and underlined** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | The requirements for accidental discoveries of heritage items are set out in Rule E11.6.1 of the AUP and in the **~~Waka Kotahi~~ NZTA** Minimum Standard P45 Accidental Archaeological Discovery Specification, or any subsequent version.<br><br>The Kumeū Railway Goods Shed and Huapai Tavern are scheduled under the AUP(OP). Long term protection management will be identified though Condition 21 b(X) E until the extent of place is amended through a Plan Change process to reflect the new location once relocated. | |
| **KS** | **21** | **Historic Heritage Management Plan (HHMP)**<br><br>**…**<br><br>**~~(c) Electronic copies of all historic heritage reports relating to historic heritage investigations (evaluation, excavation and monitoring), shall be submitted to the Manager within 12 months of completion.~~**<br><br>**~~Accidental Discoveries~~**<br><br>**Advice Notes:**<br><br>~~The Requiring Authority is advised of the requirements of Rule E11.6.1 of the AUP for "Accidental Discovery" as they relate to both contaminated soils and heritage items.~~<br><br>**Accidental Discoveries**<br><br>The requirements for accidental discoveries of heritage items are set out in Rule E11.6.1 of the AUP and in the **~~Waka Kotahi~~ NZTA** Minimum Standard P45 Accidental Archaeological Discovery Specification, or any subsequent version.<br><br>The Huapai Tavern is scheduled under the AUP(OP). Long term protection management will be identified though Condition 21(b)(X) E until the extent of place is amended through a Plan Change process to reflect the new location once relocated. | See above line item for explanation on (c). |
| **All** | **21A** | **Pre-Construction Ecological Survey**<br><br>(a) At the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, an updated ecological survey shall be undertaken by a Suitably Qualified Person. The purpose of the survey is to inform **~~the detailed design of~~** ecological management **~~plan~~** by:<br><br>(i) Confirming whether the species of value within the Identified Biodiversity Areas recorded in the Identified Biodiversity Area Schedule 2 are still present; and<br><br>(ii) Confirming whether the project will or may have a moderate or greater level of ecological effect on ecological species of value, prior to implementation of impact management measures **with** | **Amendments by NZTA to clause (a)**<br><br>NZTA amends the introductory wording to improve clarity.<br><br>NZTA amends clause (a)(ii) to acknowledge that Table 10 may be updated in future versions of the Guidelines and if the threshold for mitigation changes, there will be a |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and underlined** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | **the level of effect to be~~, as~~** determined in accordance with **Table 10 of** the EIANZ guidelines **as included in Schedule 5 to these conditions (or subsequent updated version of the table)**.<br>(b) If the ecological survey confirms the presence of ecological **~~features~~ species** of value in accordance with Condition 21A(a)(i) and that effects are likely in accordance with Condition 21A(a)(ii) then an Ecological Management Plan (or Plans) shall be prepared in accordance with Condition 21B for these areas (Confirmed Biodiversity Areas). | requirement to provide mitigation in accordance with those updates.<br>NZTA amends (b) to use wording consistent with the clause it refers to. |
| **All** | **21B** | **Ecological Management Plan (EMP)**<br>(a) An EMP shall be prepared for any Confirmed Biodiversity Areas (**~~undertaken in~~ confirmed through** Condition 21A) prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the EMP is to minimise effects of the Project on the ecological features of value of Confirmed Biodiversity Areas as far as practicable.<br>(b) **To achieve the objective, t~~T~~**he EMP shall set out the methods **~~that will be used to achieve the objective~~** which may include:<br>i. If an EMP is required in accordance with Condition 21A(b) for the presence of long tail bats:<br>…<br>D. details of how bat connectivity **(~~including suitable indigenous or exotic trees or artificial alternatives)~~** will be provided and maintained **(e.g. through the presence of suitable indigenous or exotic trees or artificial alternatives).** This could include identification of areas and timeframes for establishment of advance restoration / mitigation planting taking into account land ownership, accessibility and the timing of available funding, measures to manage the effects of light spill on bat connectivity as far as practicable; and.<br>**…** | **Amendment by NZTA**<br>NZTA amends the wording to improve clarity. |
| **All** | **22** | **Tree Management Plan (TMP)**<br>(a) Prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work, a TMP shall be prepared.<br>(b) The objective of the TMP is to avoid, remedy or mitigate effects of construction activities on trees identified as protected or notable in the AUP. **To achieve the objective**, TMP shall:<br>(i) confirm the trees that will be affected by the project work and are identified as protected or notable in the AUP; and | **Amendment by NZTA**.<br>NZTA amends clause (c) to be consistent with other management plans and to correct an error. |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | (ii) demonstrate how the design and location of project works has avoided, remedied or mitigated any effects on any tree **~~listed in~~** identified in (i) above. This may include:<br>… | |
| **All** | **23** | **Network Utility Management Plan (NUMP)**<br>(a) A NUMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work.<br>(b) The objective of the NUMP is to set out a framework for protecting, relocating and working in proximity to existing network utilities. **<u>To achieve the objective, t</u>**he NUMP shall include methods to:<br>…<br>**~~(e) The Requiring Authority shall consult with Network Utility Operators during the detailed design phase to consider opportunities to enable, or not preclude, the development of new network utility facilities including access to power and ducting within the Project, where practicable to do so. The consultation undertaken, opportunities considered, and whether or not they have been incorporated into the detailed design, shall be summarised in the NUMP~~**<br>**~~(f) The NUMP shall describe how any comments from the Network Utility Operator in relation to its assets have been addressed.~~** | **Amendment by NZTA**<br>NZTA amends (b) to be consistent with other management plans and relocate clause (e) to its own condition – the "Network Utilities Integration" condition. With this relocated condition, clause (f) is no longer required. |
| **S1** | **24** | **Low Noise Road Surface**<br>(a) An Open Graded Porous Asphalt (OGPA) pavement or a pavement with a similar or better noise reduction characteristics shall be implemented within twelve months of completion of construction of the Project.<br>(b) The surfacing in (a) above shall be maintained to retain the noise reduction performance **<u>as far as practicable</u>** **~~of the original surface~~.** | **Reject amendment to clause (b)**<br>The Panel recommends amending "as far as practicable" to "of the original surface". NZTA rejects the amendment to clause (b) because while the road surface will be maintained to retain noise reduction performance as far as practicable, the condition of original road surfaces inevitably changes over time. Resurfacing decisions must take into account the whole-of-life cost of assets, as well as resource allocation across competing project and network maintenance priorities. |
| **S3** | **24** | **Low Noise Road Surface**<br>(a) Asphaltic mix surface shall be implemented within twelve months of completion of construction of the Project. | Refer explanation in line item above. |

| Designation | Condition number | Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in **bold and <u>underlined</u>** and rejections are in **bold and ~~strikethrough~~**) | Reason for modifications |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | (b) The asphaltic mix surface shall be maintained to retain the noise reduction performance **<u>as far as practicable</u>** **~~of the original surface.~~** | |
| **<u>S1, S3</u>** | **24A** | **~~Where the Project passes through areas with a residential or future urban zoning, noise barriers shall be erected where they can be demonstrated to provide the Best Practicable Option for the control of road traffic noise having regard to the future residential use of the adjoining land.~~** | **Reject additional condition**<br><br>The Panel recommends a new condition relating to noise barriers for S1 and S3. NZTA rejects the recommended additional condition.<br><br>The primary matter being considered with respect to management of traffic noise is the extent to which the assessment of Best Practicable Option (BPO) at the time of implementation of a designation should include future receivers in addition to PPFs.<br><br>The operational noise condition framework appropriately addresses and mitigates the potential effects of traffic noise, which will be assessed during detailed design. The conditions require BPO mitigation and meet NZS6806.<br><br>The Assessment of Noise and Vibration Effects for S3 concluded that the operational noise effects from buses are predicted to be minimal on the overall noise environment and therefore did not recommend any operational noise mitigation beyond the low road noise surface. With respect to S1, the shared responsibility approach to managing noise effects, which has been accepted by the Panel, extends to both developers and the Council. Managing noise effects from the corridor will properly be addressed during the plan change process as FUZ areas become live-zoned. NZTA is routinely involved in these planning processes.<br><br>The conditions already provide for the BPO (beyond road surface material if required and |

<table>
<tr><th>Designation</th><th>Condition number</th><th>Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners<br>(additions to conditions are in bold and <u>underlined</u> and rejections are in bold and ~~strikethrough~~)</th><th>Reason for modifications</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>appropriate) to be assessed as part of detailed design, for those PPFs set out in the relevant schedule of the designation conditions. NZTA therefore does not consider it necessary to include a specific requirement for consideration for noise barriers as further mitigation.</td></tr>
<tr><td>HS<br>KS</td><td>24<u>A</u>~~B~~</td><td>Station Noise<br>All mechanical <u>and electrical</u> services <u>(including Public Address system)</u> shall be designed to comply with the following noise rating levels and maximum noise levels, as measured and assessed at any residential zone site boundary. ~~The public address system shall be designed to comply with noise limits 10dB lower than those levels in each case.~~[16]<br><table><tr><th>Time</th><th>Noise level</th></tr><tr><td>Monday to Saturday 7am-10pm</td><td>50dB $L_{Aeq}$</td></tr><tr><td>Sunday 9am-6pm</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>All other times</td><td>40dB $L_{Aeq}$<br>75dB $L_{AFmax}$</td></tr></table></td><td>Reject amendment to condition<br>The Panel recommends amendments to the Station Noise condition to be more stringent for public address systems and to delete the table. NZTA rejects the recommendation. As detailed in the evidence of Ms Wilkening[17], the station noise from mechanical plant and any Public Address (PA) system should be designed to comply with the relevant underlying zone noise limits. There is no basis to impose tighter controls than the AUP:OP criteria. The condition also cannot operate as intended without reference to the table.</td></tr>
<tr><td>S1</td><td>25</td><td>The Noise Criteria Categories identified in Schedule 3: PPFs Noise Criteria Categories at each of the PPFs shall be achieved where practicable and subject to Conditions 25 to 36 (all traffic noise conditions).<br><br>The Noise Criteria Categories ~~at the PPFs identified in Schedule 3: Identified PPFs Noise Criteria Categories~~ do not need to be complied with <u>at a PPF</u> where:<br>…</td><td>Amendment by NZTA<br>Amendments by NZTA to improve clarity of condition.</td></tr>
<tr><td>S1</td><td>31</td><td>Prior to the Start of Construction in the vicinity of each Category C Building, the Requiring Authority shall write to the owner of the Category C Building requesting entry to assess the noise reduction performance of the existing building envelope. If the building owner agrees to entry within ~~three (3)~~ <u>12</u> months of the</td><td>Amendment by NZTA</td></tr>
</table>

[16] The Panel decision recommends deletion of the above table as part of this amendment.
[17] Rebuttal Evidence of Siiri Wilkening, dated 8 September 2023, at [8.20] – [8.21]

<table>
<tr><th>Designation</th><th>Condition number</th><th>Modifications made by NZTA to conditions recommended by the Hearing Commissioners (additions to conditions are in bold and <u>underlined</u> and rejections are in bold and ~~strikethrough~~)</th><th>Reason for modifications</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>date of the Requiring Authority's letter, the Requiring Authority shall instruct a Suitably Qualified Person to visit the building and assess the noise reduction performance of the existing building envelope.</td><td>NZTA has amended this condition to provide building owners with more time and so it is consistent with NZTA's standard practice.</td></tr>
<tr><td>S1</td><td>32</td><td>For each Category C Building identified, the Requiring Authority is deemed to have complied with Condition 31 above if:<br>…<br>(c) The building owner did not agree to entry within ~~three (3)~~ <u>12</u> months of the date of the Requiring Authority's letter sent in accordance with Condition 31 above (including where the owner did not respond within that period); or<br>…</td><td>Amendment by NZTA<br>NZTA has amended this condition to provide building owners with more time and so it is consistent with NZTA's standard practice.</td></tr>
<tr><td><u>All</u></td><td><u>New Schedule</u></td><td><u>Schedule 5: Table 10 of the 2018 EIANZ Guidelines</u><br><u>Criteria for describing level of effects (Adapted from Regini (2000) and Boffa Miskell (2011))</u>
<table>
<tr><th><u>Ecological Value →<br><br>Magnitude ↓</u></th><th><u>Very high</u></th><th><u>High</u></th><th><u>Moderate</u></th><th><u>Low</u></th><th><u>Negligible</u></th></tr>
<tr><td><u>Very high</u></td><td><u>Very high</u></td><td><u>Very high</u></td><td><u>High</u></td><td><u>Moderate</u></td><td><u>Low</u></td></tr>
<tr><td><u>High</u></td><td><u>Very high</u></td><td><u>Very high</u></td><td><u>Moderate</u></td><td><u>Low</u></td><td><u>Very low</u></td></tr>
<tr><td><u>Moderate</u></td><td><u>High</u></td><td><u>High</u></td><td><u>Moderate</u></td><td><u>Low</u></td><td><u>Very low</u></td></tr>
<tr><td><u>Low</u></td><td><u>Moderate</u></td><td><u>Low</u></td><td><u>Low</u></td><td><u>Very low</u></td><td><u>Very low</u></td></tr>
<tr><td><u>Negligible</u></td><td><u>Low</u></td><td><u>Very low</u></td><td><u>Very low</u></td><td><u>Very low</u></td><td><u>Very low</u></td></tr>
<tr><td><u>Positive</u></td><td><u>Net gain</u></td><td><u>Net gain</u></td><td><u>Net gain</u></td><td><u>Net gain</u></td><td><u>Net gain</u></td></tr>
</table></td><td>Amendment by NZTA<br>See explanation in the Pre-Construction Ecological Survey condition above for the rationale for this additional schedule.</td></tr>
</table>

**Appendix A – NZTA Modifications to NoR S1 conditions (clean)**

## [# Council to allocate #] – Alternative State Highway

| | |
|---|---|
| Designation Number | XXXX |
| Requiring Authority | New Zealand Transport Agency. |
| Location | Between State Highway 16 near Foster Road and State Highway 16 at Brigham Creek Interchange. |
| Lapse Date | In accordance with section 184(1)(c) of the RMA, this designation shall lapse if not given effect to within 20 years from the date on which it is included in the AUP. |

# Purpose

Construction, operation and maintenance of a transport corridor.

# Conditions

**Abbreviations and definitions**

| Acronym/Term | Definition |
|---|---|
| Activity sensitive to noise | Any dwelling, visitor accommodation, boarding house, marae, papakāinga, integrated residential development, retirement village, supported residential care, care centre, lecture theatre in a tertiary education facility, classroom in an education facility and healthcare facility with an overnight stay facility |
| AUP | Auckland Unitary Plan |
| BPO or Best Practicable Option | Has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA 1991 |
| CEMP | Construction Environmental Management Plan |
| Certification of material changes to management plans | Confirmation from the Manager that a material change to a management plan has been prepared in accordance with the condition to which it relates.<br>A material change to a management plan shall be deemed certified:<br>(a) where the Requiring Authority has received written confirmation from Council that the material change to the management plan is certified; or<br>(b) ten working days from the submission of the material change to the management plan where no written confirmation of certification has been received |
| CMP | Cultural Monitoring Plan |
| CNVMP | Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan |
| CNVMP Schedule or Schedule | A schedule to the CNVMP |
| Completion of Construction | When construction of the Project (or part of the Project) is complete and it is available for use |
| Confirmed Biodiversity Areas | Areas recorded in the Identified Biodiversity Area Schedule where the ecological values and effects have been confirmed through the ecological survey under Condition 28. |
| Construction Works | Activities undertaken to construct the Project excluding Enabling Works |
| Council | Auckland Council |
| CTMP | Construction Traffic Management Plan |
| Educational facility | Facility used for education to secondary level<br>Includes: |

| | |
|---|---|
| | • schools and outdoor education facilities; and<br>• accommodation, administrative, cultural, religious, health, retail and communal facilities accessory to the above<br>Excludes:<br>• care centres; and<br>• tertiary education facilities |
| EIANZ Guidelines | Ecological Impact Assessment: EIANZ guidelines for use in New Zealand: terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems, second edition, dated May 2018 |
| EMP | Ecological Management Plan |
| Enabling works | Includes, but is not limited to, the following and similar activities:<br>(a) geotechnical investigations (including trial embankments);<br>(b) archaeological site investigations;<br>(c) formation of access for geotechnical investigations;<br>(d) establishment of site yards, site entrances and fencing;<br>(e) constructing and sealing site access roads;<br>(f) demolition or removal of buildings and structures;<br>(g) relocation of services; and<br>(h) establishment of mitigation measures (such as erosion and sediment control measures, temporary noise walls, earth bunds and planting) |
| HHMP | Historic Heritage Management Plan |
| HNZPT | Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga |
| HNZPTA | Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 |
| Identified Biodiversity Area | Means an area or areas of features of ecological value where the Project ecologist has identified that the project will potentially have a moderate or greater level of ecological effect, prior to implementation of impact management measures, as determined in accordance with the EIANZ guidelines |
| Manager | The Manager – Resource Consents of the Auckland Council, or authorised delegate |
| Mana Whenua | Mana Whenua as referred to in the conditions are considered to be, but not limited to, the following (in no particular order), who at the time of Notice of Requirement expressed a desire to be involved in the Project:<br>• Te Kawerau ā Maki<br>• Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara<br>• Te Ākitai Waiohua |
| Network Utility Operator | Has the same meaning as set out in section 166 of the RMA |
| NIMP | Network Integration Management Plan |
| NOR | Notice of Requirement |
| North West growth area | Constitutes the Future Urban Zone, or live zoned urban land in Kumeū, Huapai, Redhills, Redhills North, Riverhead and Whenuapai |
| NUMP | Network Utilities Management Plan |
| Outline Plan | An outline plan prepared in accordance with section 176A of the RMA |
| OSMP | Open Space Management Plan |
| Project Liaison Person | The person or persons appointed for the duration of the Project's Construction Works to be the main point of contact for persons wanting information about the Project or affected by the Construction Works |
| Protected Premises and Facilities (PPF) | Protected Premises and Facilities as defined in New Zealand Standard NZS 6806:2010: Acoustics – Road-traffic noise – New and altered roads |
| Requiring Authority | Has the same meaning as section 166 of the RMA and, for this Designation is New Zealand Transport Agency |

| | |
|---|---|
| RMA | Resource Management Act 1991 |
| SCEMP | Stakeholder Communication and Engagement Management Plan |
| Stakeholder | Stakeholders to be identified in accordance with Condition 3, which may include as appropriate:<br>(a) adjacent owners and occupiers;<br>(b) adjacent business owners and operators;<br>(c) central and local government bodies;<br>(d) community groups;<br>(e) developers;<br>(f) development agencies;<br>(g) educational facilities; and<br>(h) network utility operators |
| Stage of Work | Any physical works that require the development of an Outline Plan |
| Start of Construction | The time when Construction Works (excluding Enabling Works) start |
| Suitably Qualified Person | A person (or persons) who can provide sufficient evidence to demonstrate their suitability, experience and competence in the relevant field of expertise |
| TMP | Tree Management Plan |
| ULDMP | Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **General conditions** | |
| **1.** | **Activity in General Accordance with Plans and Information**<br>(a) Except as provided for in the conditions below, and subject to final design and Outline Plan(s), works within the designation shall be undertaken in general accordance with the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1<br>(b) Where there is inconsistency between:<br>(i) the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1 and the requirements of the following conditions, the conditions shall prevail;<br>(ii) the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1, and the management plans under the conditions of the designation, the requirements of the management plans shall prevail. |
| **2.** | **Project Information**<br>(a) A project website, or equivalent virtual information source, shall be established as soon as reasonably practicable, and within six months of the inclusion of this designation in the AUP.<br>(b) All directly affected owners and occupiers shall be notified in writing as soon as reasonably practicable once the website or equivalent information source has been established. The project website or virtual information source shall include these conditions and shall provide information on:<br>(i) the status of the Project;<br>(ii) anticipated construction timeframes;<br>(iii) contact details for enquiries;<br>(iv) the implications of the designation for landowners, occupiers and business owners and operators within the designation on how / where they can receive additional support following confirmation of the designation;<br>(v) a subscription service to enable receipt of project updates by email;<br>(vi) when and how to apply for consent for works in the designation under section 176(1)(b) of the RMA; and<br>(vii) how/where to access noise modelling contours to inform development adjacent to the designation.<br>(c) At the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the project website or virtual information source shall be updated to provide information on the likely date for Start of Construction, and any staging of works. |
| **3.** | **Stakeholder Communication and Engagement**<br>(a) At least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the Requiring Authority shall identify:<br>(i) a list of Stakeholders;<br>(ii) a list of properties within the designation which the Requiring Authority does not own or have occupation rights to; and<br>(iii) methods to engage with Stakeholders and the owners and occupiers of properties identified in 3(a)(i) –(ii) above.<br>(b) A record of (a) shall be submitted with an Outline Plan for the relevant Stage of Work. |
| **4.** | **Designation Review**<br>As soon as reasonably practicable following Completion of Construction, the Requiring Authority shall:<br>(i) review the extent of the designation to identify any areas of designated land that it no longer requires for the on-going operation, maintenance or mitigation of effects of the Project; and<br>(ii) give notice to Auckland Council in accordance with section 182 of the RMA for the removal of those parts of the designation identified above. |
| **5.** | **Lapse**<br>In accordance with section 184(1)(c) of the RMA, this designation shall lapse if not given effect to within 20 years from the date on which it is included in the AUP. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 6. | **Network Utility Operators and Auckland Council (Section 176 Approval)**<br>(a) Prior to the start of Construction Works, Network Utility Operators with existing infrastructure and Auckland Council in relation to parks will not require written consent under section 176 of the RMA for the following activities:<br>(i) operation, maintenance and repair works;<br>(ii) minor renewal works to existing network utilities or parks necessary for the on-going provision or security of supply of network utility operations or parks operations;<br>(iii) minor works such as new service connections; and<br>(iv) the upgrade and replacement of existing network utilities in the same location with the same or similar effects on the work authorised by the designation as the existing utility.<br>(b) To the extent that a record of written approval is required for the activities listed above, this condition shall constitute written approval. |
| **Pre-construction conditions** | |
| 7. | **Outline Plan**<br>(a) An Outline Plan (or Plans) shall be prepared in accordance with section 176A of the RMA.<br>(b) Outline Plans (or Plan) may be submitted in parts or in stages to address particular activities (e.g. design or construction aspects), or a Stage of Work of the Project.<br>(c) Outline Plans shall include any management plan or plans that are relevant to the management of effects of those activities or Stage of Work, which may include:<br>(i) Construction Environmental Management Plan;<br>(ii) Construction Traffic Management Plan;<br>(iii) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan;<br>(iv) Network Integration Management Plan;<br>(v) Open Space Management Plan;<br>(vi) Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan;<br>(vii) Historic Heritage Management Plan;<br>(viii) Ecological Management Plan;<br>(ix) Tree Management Plan; and<br>(x) Network Utilities Management Plan. |
| 8. | **Network Utilities Integration**<br>The Requiring Authority shall consult with Network Utility Operators during the detailed design phase to consider opportunities to enable, or not preclude, the development of new network utility facilities including access to power and ducting within the Project, where practicable to do so. The consultation undertaken, opportunities considered, and whether or not they have been incorporated into the detailed design, shall be summarised in the Outline Plan(s) prepared for the Project. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| | **Flood Hazard**<br>For the purpose of Condition 9:<br>(a) AEP – means Annual Exceedance Probability;<br>(b) Existing authorised habitable floor – means the floor level of any room (floor) in a residential building which is authorised and exists at the time the outline plan is submitted, excluding a laundry, bathroom, toilet or any room used solely as an entrance hall, passageway or garage;<br>(c) Flood prone area – means potential ponding areas that may flood and commonly comprise of topographical depression areas. The areas can occur naturally or as a result of constructed features;<br>(d) Maximum Probable Development – is the design case for consideration of future flows allowing for development within a catchment that takes into account the maximum impervious surface limits of the current zone or if the land is zoned Future Urban in the AUP, the probable level of development arising from zone changes;<br>(e) Pre-Project development – means existing site condition prior to the Project (including existing buildings and roadways); and<br>(f) Post-Project development – means site condition after the Project has been completed (including existing and new buildings and roadways). |
| **9.** | **Flood Hazard**<br>(a) The Project shall be designed to achieve the following flood risk outcomes:<br>(i) no increase in flood levels in a 1% AEP event for existing authorised habitable floors that are already subject to flooding or have a freeboard less than 500mm;<br>(ii) no increase in flood levels in a 1% AEP event for existing authorised community, commercial, industrial and network utility building floors that are already subject to flooding or have a freeboard less than 300mm;<br>(iii) maximum of 50mm increase in water level in a 1% AEP event outside and adjacent to the designation boundaries between the pre and post Project scenarios; and<br>(iv) no increase of Flood Hazard for the main access to authorised habitable dwellings existing at time the Outline Plan is submitted. The assessment shall be undertaken for the 1% AEP rainfall event.<br>(v) Where Flood Hazard is:<br>A. velocity x depth greater than or equal to 0.6; or<br>B. depth greater than 0.5m; or<br>C. velocity greater than 2m/s.<br>(b) Compliance with this condition shall be demonstrated in the Outline Plan, which shall include flood modelling of the pre-Project and post-Project 1% AEP flood levels (for Maximum Probable Development land use with allowances for climate change).<br>(c) Where the above outcomes can be achieved through alternative measures outside of the designation such as flood stop banks, flood walls, raising existing authorised habitable floor level and new overland flow paths or varied through agreement with the relevant landowner, confirmation shall be provided that any necessary landowner and statutory approvals have been obtained for that work or alternative outcome. |
| **10.** | **Existing property access**<br>Prior to submission of the Outline Plan, consultation shall be undertaken with landowners and occupiers whose vehicle access to their property will be altered by the project. The Outline Plan shall demonstrate how safe reconfigured or alternate access will be provided, unless otherwise addressed with the affected landowner. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 11. | **Management Plans**<br>(a) Any management plan shall:<br>(i) be prepared and implemented in accordance with the relevant management plan condition;<br>(ii) be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person(s);<br>(iii) include sufficient detail relating to the management of effects associated with the relevant activities and/or Stage of Work to which it relates;<br>(iv) summarise comments received from Mana Whenua and stakeholders as required by the relevant management plan condition, along with a summary of where comments have:<br>A. been incorporated; and<br>B. where not incorporated, the reasons why.<br>(v) be submitted as part of an Outline Plan pursuant to section 176A of the RMA, with the exception of SCEMPs and CNVMP Schedules;<br>(vi) once finalised, uploaded to the Project website or equivalent virtual information source.<br>(b) Any management plan developed in accordance with Condition 11 may:<br>(i) be submitted in parts or in stages to address particular activities (e.g. design or construction aspects), a Stage of Work of the Project, or to address specific activities authorised by the designation;<br>(ii) except for material changes, be amended to reflect any changes in design, construction methods or management of effects without further process;<br>(c) If there is a material change required to a management plan which has been submitted with an Outline Plan, the revised part of the plan shall be submitted to the Council as an update to the Outline Plan or for Certification as soon as practicable following identification of the need for a revision;<br>(d) Any material changes to the SCEMP(s) are to be submitted to the Council for information. |
| 12. | **Stakeholder Communication and Engagement Management Plan (SCEMP)**<br>(a) A SCEMP shall be prepared in consultation with Stakeholders prior to the Start of Construction. The objective of the SCEMP is to identify how the public and Stakeholders will be engaged with throughout Construction Works.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the SCEMP shall include:<br>(i) a list of Stakeholders;<br>(ii) a list of properties within the designation which the Requiring Authority does not own or have occupation rights to;<br>(iii) methods to engage with Stakeholders and the owners of properties identified in 12(b)(ii) above;<br>(iv) the contact details for the Project Liaison Person. These details shall be on the Project website, or equivalent virtual information source, and prominently displayed at the main entrance(s) to the site(s);<br>(v) methods for engaging with Mana Whenua, to be developed in consultation with Mana Whenua;<br>(vi) methods and timing to engage with owners and occupiers whose access is directly affected;<br>(vii) methods to communicate key project milestones and the proposed hours of construction activities including outside of normal working hours and on weekends and public holidays, to the parties identified in 12(b)(i) and (ii) above; and<br>(viii) linkages and cross-references to communication and engagement methods set out in other conditions and management plans where relevant.<br>(c) Any SCEMP prepared for a Stage of Work shall be submitted to Council for information a minimum of ten working days prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 13. | **Network Integration Management Plan (NIMP)**<br>(a) At least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the Requiring Authority shall prepare, in collaboration with other relevant road controlling authorities, a Network Integration Management Plan (NIMP).<br>(b) The objective of the NIMP is to identify how the Project will integrate with the planned transport network in the North West growth area to achieve an effective, efficient and safe land transport system. To achieve this objective, the NIMP shall include details of the:<br>(i) Project implementation approach and any staging of the Project, including design, management and operational matters; and<br>(ii) Sequencing of the Project with the planned transport network, including design, management and operational matters. |
| 14. | **Cultural Advisory Report**<br>(a) At least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, Mana Whenua shall be invited to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report for the Project. The objective of the Cultural Advisory Report is to assist in understanding and identifying Ngā Taonga Tuku Iho ('treasures handed down by our ancestors') affected by the Project, to inform their management and protection.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the Requiring Authority shall invite Mana Whenua to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report that:<br>(i) identifies the cultural sites, landscapes and values that have the potential to be affected by the construction and operation of the Project;<br>(ii) sets out the desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values;<br>(iii) identifies traditional cultural practices within the area that may be impacted by the Project;<br>(iv) identifies opportunities for restoration and enhancement of identified cultural sites, landscapes and values within the Project area;<br>(v) taking into account the outcomes of 14(b)(i) to (iv) above, identify cultural matters and principles that should be considered in the development of the ULDMP and HHMP, and the CMP referred to in Condition 21;<br>(vi) identifies and (if possible) nominates traditional names along the Project alignment. Noting there may be formal statutory processes outside the Project required in any decision-making.<br>(c) The desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values identified in the Cultural Advisory Report shall be discussed with Mana Whenua and those outcomes reflected in the relevant management plans where practicable;<br>(d) Conditions 14(b) and (c) will cease to apply if:<br>(i) Mana Whenua have been invited to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report by a date at least six months prior to start of Construction Works; and<br>(ii) Mana Whenua have not provided a Cultural Advisory Report within six months prior to start of Construction Works. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **15.** | **Open Space Management Plan (OSMP)**<br>(a) An OSMP shall be prepared for Fred Taylor Park prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work that will impact on Fred Taylor Park.<br>(b) Auckland Council Parks shall be invited to participate in the development of the OSMP at least eighteen (18) months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work that will impact on Fred Taylor Park.<br>(c) The objective of the OSMP is to minimise, as far as practicable, adverse effects on the recreation amenity of Fred Taylor Park resulting from the Project. To achieve the objective, the OSMP shall include details of:<br>(i) how ongoing access (including walking and cycling) to Fred Taylor Park during construction will be maintained in accordance with the Construction Traffic Management Plan (Condition 22);<br>(ii) opportunities to coordinate the forward work programme for Fred Taylor Park, where appropriate, with Auckland Council Parks;<br>(iii) measures to reasonably maintain the existing service level of the affected park, including any temporary or permanent reconfiguration or replacement of park facilities; and<br>(iv) how matters raised by Auckland Council Parks and relevant stakeholders have been incorporated into the OSMP, and where matters have not been incorporated, the reasons why not. |
| | **Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan (ULDMP)** |
| **16.** | (a) A ULDMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the ULDMP(s) is to:<br>(i) enable integration of the Project's permanent works into the surrounding landscape and urban, anticipated future urban, or rural context; and<br>(ii) ensure that the Project manages potential adverse landscape and visual effects as far as practicable and contributes to a quality environment.<br>(b) Mana Whenua shall be invited to participate in the development of the ULDMP(s) to provide input into relevant cultural landscape and design matters including how desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values identified and discussed in accordance with Condition 14 may be reflected in the ULDMP.<br>(c) Relevant stakeholders shall be invited to participate in the development of the ULDMP at least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **17.** | (a) To achieve the objective set out in Condition 16, the ULDMP(s) shall provide details of how the project:<br>(i) is designed to integrate with the adjacent urban, anticipated future urban, or rural context, including the surrounding existing or proposed topography, urban environment (i.e. centres and density of built form), natural environment, landscape character and open space zones (including Fred Taylor Park);<br>(ii) provides appropriate walking and cycling connectivity to, and interfaces with, existing or proposed adjacent land uses, public transport infrastructure and walking and cycling connections;<br>(iii) promotes inclusive access (where appropriate);<br>(iv) promotes a sense of personal safety by aligning with best practice guidelines, such as:<br>A. Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED) principles;<br>B. Safety in Design (SID) requirements; and<br>C. Maintenance in Design (MID) requirements and anti-vandalism/anti-graffiti measures; and<br>(v) Interfaces with the operational areas of commercial premises within business zoned land, including loading areas, internal circulation and car parking, where practicable.<br>(b) The ULDMP shall be prepared in general accordance with:<br>(i) Waka Kotahi Urban Design Guidelines: Bridging the Gap (2013) or any subsequent updated version;<br>(ii) NZTA Landscape Guidelines (2018) or any subsequent updated version; and<br>(iii) Waka Kotahi P39 Standard Specification for Highway Landscape Treatments (2013) or any subsequent updated version. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **18.** | The ULDMP(s) shall include:<br>(a) a concept plan – which depicts the overall landscape and urban design concept, and explain the rationale for the landscape and urban design proposals;<br>(b) developed design concepts, including principles for walking and cycling facilities and public transport; and<br>(c) landscape and urban design details – that cover the following:<br>(i) road design – elements such as intersection form, carriageway gradient and associated earthworks contouring including cut and fill batters, shaped to a natural profile where practicable and appropriate to the surrounding context, and the interface with adjacent land uses and existing roads (including slip lanes), benching, spoil disposal sites, median width and treatment, roadside width and treatment;<br>(ii) roadside elements – such as lighting, fencing, wayfinding and signage;<br>(iii) architectural and landscape treatment of all major structures, including bridges and retaining walls;<br>(iv) architectural and landscape treatment of noise barriers;<br>(v) landscape treatment and planting of permanent stormwater control wetlands and swales;<br>(vi) integration of passenger transport;<br>(vii) pedestrian and cycle facilities including paths, road crossings and dedicated pedestrian/ cycle bridges or underpasses;<br>(viii) historic heritage places with reference to the HHMP (Condition 27); and<br>(ix) re-instatement of construction and site compound areas; and<br>(x) re-instatement of features to be retained such as:<br>A. boundary features;<br>B. landscaping;<br>C. driveways;<br>D. accessways; and<br>E. fences.<br>(d) The ULDMP shall also include the following planting details and maintenance requirements:<br>(i) planting design details including:<br>A. identification of existing trees and vegetation that will be retained with reference to the TMP and Ecological Management Plan. Where practicable, mature trees and native vegetation should be retained;<br>B. street trees, shrubs and ground cover suitable for the location;<br>C. treatment of fill slopes to integrate with adjacent land use, streams, Riparian margins and open space zones;<br>D. identification of any planting requirements under the Ecological Management Plan (Conditions 29) and TMP (Condition 30); and<br>E. integration of any planting requirements required by conditions of any resource consents for the project;<br>(ii) a planting programme including the staging of planting in relation to the construction programme which shall, as far as practicable, include provision for planting within each planting season following completion of works in each Stage of Work; and<br>(iii) detailed specifications relating to the following:<br>A. weed control and clearance;<br>B. pest animal management (to support plant establishment);<br>C. ground preparation (top soiling and decompaction);<br>D. mulching; and<br>E. plant sourcing and planting, including hydroseeding and grassing, and use of eco-sourced species |
| **Specific Outline Plan requirements** | |
| **Construction conditions** | |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **19.** | **Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP)**<br>(a) A CEMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the CEMP is to set out the management procedures and construction methods to be undertaken to, avoid, remedy or mitigate any adverse effects associated with Construction Works as far as practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CEMP shall include:<br>(i) the roles and responsibilities of staff and contractors;<br>(ii) details of the site or project manager and the Project Liaison Person, including their contact details (phone and email address);<br>(iii) the Construction Works programmes and the staging approach, and the proposed hours of work;<br>(iv) details of the proposed construction yards including temporary screening when adjacent to residential zones;<br>(v) details of the proposed construction lighting;<br>(vi) methods for controlling dust and the removal of debris and demolition of construction materials from public roads or places;<br>(vii) methods for providing for the health and safety of the general public;<br>(viii) measures to mitigate flood hazard effects such as siting stockpiles out of floodplains, minimising obstruction to flood flows, actions to respond to warnings of heavy rain;<br>(ix) procedures for incident management;<br>(x) location and procedures for the refuelling and maintenance of plant and equipment to avoid discharges of fuels or lubricants to watercourses;<br>(xi) measures to address the storage of fuels, lubricants, hazardous and/or dangerous materials, along with contingency procedures to address emergency spill response(s) and clean up;<br>(xii) summary of measures included to respond to matters raised in engagement, if not already covered above;<br>(xiii) procedures for responding to complaints about Construction Works; and<br>(xiv) methods for amending and updating the CEMP as required. |
| **20.** | **Complaints Register**<br>(a) At all times during Construction Works, a record of any complaints received about the Construction Works shall be maintained. The record shall include:<br>(i) the date, time and nature of the complaint;<br>(ii) the name, phone number and address of the complainant (unless the complainant wishes to remain anonymous);<br>(iii) measures taken to respond to the complaint (including a record of the response provided to the complainant) or confirmation of no action if deemed appropriate;<br>(iv) the outcome of the investigation into the complaint; and<br>(v) any other activities in the area, unrelated to the Project that may have contributed to the complaint, such as non-project construction, fires, traffic accidents or unusually dusty conditions generally.<br>(b) A copy of the Complaints Register required by this condition shall be made available to the Manager upon request as soon as practicable after the request is made. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 21. | **Cultural Monitoring Plan (CMP)**<br>(a) Prior to the start of Construction Works, a CMP shall be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person(s) identified in collaboration with Mana Whenua. The objective of the CMP is to identify methods for undertaking cultural monitoring to assist with management of any cultural effects during Construction works.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CMP shall include:<br>(i) Requirements for formal dedication or cultural interpretation to be undertaken prior to start of Construction Works in areas identified as having significance to Mana Whenua;<br>(ii) Requirements and protocols for cultural inductions for contractors and subcontractors;<br>(iii) Identification of activities, sites and areas where cultural monitoring is required during particular Construction Works;<br>(iv) Identification of personnel to undertake cultural monitoring, including any geographic definition of their responsibilities; and<br>(v) Details of personnel to assist with management of any cultural effects identified during cultural monitoring, including implementation of the Accidental Discovery Protocol<br>(c) If Enabling Works involving soil disturbance are undertaken prior to the start of Construction Works, an Enabling Works CMP shall be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person identified in collaboration with Mana Whenua. This plan may be prepared as a standalone Enabling Works CMP or be included in the main Construction Works CMP.<br><br>**Advice note:**<br>Where appropriate, the CMP shall align with the requirements of other conditions of the designation and resource consents for the Project which require monitoring during Construction Works. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 22. | **Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP)**<br>(a) A CTMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the CTMP is to avoid, remedy or mitigate, as far as practicable, adverse construction traffic effects.<br>(b) To achieve this objective, the CTMP shall include:<br>(i) methods to manage the effects of temporary traffic management activities on traffic;<br>(ii) measures to ensure the safety of all transport users;<br>(iii) the estimated numbers, frequencies, routes and timing of traffic movements, including any specific non-working or non-movement hours to manage vehicular and pedestrian traffic near educational facilities or to manage traffic congestion;<br>(iv) site access routes and access points for heavy vehicles, the size and location of parking areas for plant, construction vehicles and the vehicles of workers and visitors;<br>(v) identification of detour routes and other methods to ensure the safe management and maintenance of traffic flows, including public transport services, pedestrians and cyclists;<br>(vi) methods to maintain access to and within property and/or private roads where practicable, or to provide alternative arrangements when it will not be, including details of how access is managed for loading and unloading of goods. Engagement with landowners or occupiers whose access is directly affected shall be undertaken in accordance with the SCEMP;<br>(vii) the management approach to loads on heavy vehicles, including covering loads of fine material, the use of wheel-wash facilities at site exit points and the timely removal of any material deposited or spilled on public roads;<br>(viii) methods that will be undertaken to communicate traffic management measures to affected road users (e.g. residents / public / stakeholders / emergency services);<br>(ix) details of minimum network performance parameters during the construction phase, including any measures to monitor compliance with the performance parameters; and<br>(x) details of any measures proposed to be implemented in the event of thresholds identified in 22(b)(ix) being exceeded.<br>(c) Auditing, monitoring and reporting requirements relating to traffic management activities shall be undertaken in accordance with the New Zealand Guide to Temporary Traffic Management (April 2023) or any subsequent version. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 23. | **Construction Noise Standards**<br>(a) Construction noise shall be measured and assessed in accordance with NZS6803:1999 Acoustics – Construction Noise and shall comply with the noise standards set out in the following table as far as practicable:<br><br>**Table 23-1 Construction Noise Standards** |

| Day of week | Time period | $L_{Aeq(15min)}$ | $L_{AFmax}$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Occupied activity sensitive to noise** | | | |
| Weekday | 0630h - 0730h | 55 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 70 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 65 dB | 80 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| Saturday | 0630h - 0730h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 70 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| Sunday and Public Holidays | 0630h - 0730h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 55 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| **Other occupied buildings** | | | |
| All | 0730h – 1800h | 70 dB | |
| | 1800h – 0730h | 75 dB | |

(b) Where compliance with the noise standards set out in Table 23-1 is not practicable, the methodology in Condition 26 shall apply.

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 24. | **Construction Vibration Standards**<br>(a) Construction vibration shall be measured in accordance with ISO 4866:2010 Mechanical vibration and shock – Vibration of fixed structures – Guidelines for the measurement of vibrations and evaluation of their effects on structures and shall comply with the vibration standards set out in Table 24-1 as far as practicable.<br><br>**Table 24-1 Construction Vibration Standards** |

| Receiver | Details | Category A* | Category B* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Occupied activities sensitive to noise | Night-time 2000h - 0630h | 0.3mm/s ppv | 1mm/s ppv |
| | Daytime 0630h - 2000h | 1mm/s ppv | 5mm/s ppv |
| Other occupied buildings | Daytime 0630h - 2000h | 2mm/s ppv | 5mm/s ppv |
| All other buildings | At all other times Vibration transient | 5mm/s ppv | BS 5228-2** Table B2 |
| | At all other times Vibration continuous | 5mm/s ppv | BS 5228-2** 50% of Table B2 values |

** Refer to NZTA State highway construction and maintenance noise and vibration guide for further explanation regarding Category A and B criteria*

*** BS 5228-2:2009 'Code of practice for noise and vibration control on construction and open sites – Part 2: Vibration'*

(b) Where compliance with the vibration standards set out in Table 24-1 is not practicable, the methodology in Condition 26 shall apply.

(c) If measured or predicted vibration from construction activities exceeds the Category A criteria, a Suitably Qualified Person shall assess and manage construction vibration during those activities.

(d) If measured or predicted vibration from construction activities exceeds the Category B criteria those activities must only proceed if vibration effects on affected buildings are assessed, monitored and mitigated by a Suitably Qualified Person.

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 25. | **Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP)**<br>(a) A CNVMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for Stage of Work. A CNVMP shall be implemented during the Stage of Work to which it relates. The objective of the CNVMP is to provide a framework for the development and implementation of the Best Practicable Option for the management of construction noise and vibration effects to achieve the construction noise and vibration standards set out in Conditions 23 and 24 to the extent practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CNVMP shall be prepared in accordance with Annex E2 of the New Zealand Standard NZS6803:1999 'Acoustics – Construction Noise' (NZS6803:1999) and shall as a minimum, address the following:<br>(i) description of the works and anticipated equipment/processes;<br>(ii) hours of operation, including times and days when construction activities would occur;<br>(iii) the construction noise and vibration standards for the project;<br>(iv) identification of receivers where noise and vibration standards apply;<br>(v) a hierarchy of management and mitigation options, including any requirements to limit night works and works during other sensitive times, including Sundays and public holidays as far as practicable;<br>(vi) methods and frequency for monitoring and reporting on construction noise and vibration;<br>(vii) procedures for communication and engagement with nearby residents and stakeholders, including notification of proposed construction activities, the period of construction activities, and management of noise and vibration complaints.<br>(viii) contact details of the Project Liaison Person;<br>(ix) procedures for the regular training of the operators of construction equipment to minimise noise and vibration as well as expected construction site behaviours for all workers;<br>(x) procedures and requirements for the preparation of a Schedule to the CNVMP (Schedule) for those areas where compliance with the noise Condition 23 and/or vibration standards Condition 24 Category A or Category B will not be practicable;<br>(xi) identification of trigger levels for undertaking building condition surveys, which shall be below Category B day time levels;<br>(xii) procedures and trigger levels for undertaking building condition surveys before and after works to determine whether any cosmetic or structural damage has occurred as a result of construction vibration;<br>(xiii) methodology and programme of desktop and field audits and inspections to be undertaken to ensure that the CNVMP, Schedules and the best practicable option for management of effects are being implemented; and<br>(xiv) requirements for review and update of the CNVMP. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 26. | **Schedule to a CNVMP**<br>(a) A Schedule to the CNVMP (Schedule) shall be prepared prior to the start of the construction to which it relates by a Suitably Qualified Person, in consultation with the owners and occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule, when:<br>(i) Construction noise is either predicted or measured to exceed the noise standards in Condition 23<br>(ii) Construction vibration is either predicted or measured to exceed the Category A standard at the receivers in Condition 24.<br>(b) The objective of the Schedule is to set out the Best Practicable Option measures to manage noise and/or vibration effects of the construction activity beyond those measures set out in the CNVMP.<br>(c) To achieve the objective, the Schedule shall include details such as:<br>(i) construction activity location, start and finish times;<br>(ii) the nearest neighbours to the construction activity;<br>(iii) the predicted noise and/or vibration level for all receivers where the levels are predicted or measured to exceed the applicable standards in Conditions 23 and 24 and the predicted duration of the exceedance;<br>(iv) for works proposed between 2000h and 0630h, the reasons why the proposed works must be undertaken during these hours and why they cannot be practicably undertaken during the daytime;<br>(v) the proposed mitigation options that have been selected, and the options that have been discounted as being impracticable and the reasons why;<br>(vi) a summary of the consultation undertaken with owners and occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule, and how consultation has and has not been taken into account; and<br>(vii) location, times and types of monitoring.<br>(d) The Schedule shall be submitted to the Manager for information at least 5 working days (except in unforeseen circumstances) in advance of Construction Works that are covered by the scope of the Schedule and shall form part of the CNVMP. If any comments are received from the Manager, these shall be considered by the Requiring Authority prior to implementation of the Schedule.<br>(e) Where material changes are made to a Schedule required by this condition, the Requiring Authority shall consult the owners and/or occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule prior to submitting the amended Schedule to the Manager for information in accordance with (d) above. The amended Schedule shall document the consultation undertaken with those owners and occupiers, and how consultation outcomes have and have not been taken into account. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 27. | **Historic Heritage Management Plan (HHMP)**<br>(a) A HHMP shall be prepared in consultation with Council, HNZPT and Mana Whenua prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the HHMP is to protect historic heritage and to remedy and mitigate any residual effects as far as practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the HHMP shall identify:<br>(i) any adverse direct and indirect effects on historic heritage sites and measures to appropriately avoid, remedy or mitigate any such effects, including a tabulated summary of these effects and measures;<br>(ii) methods for the identification and assessment of potential historic heritage places within the Designation to inform detailed design;<br>(iii) known historic heritage places and potential archaeological sites within the Designation, including identifying any archaeological sites for which an Archaeological Authority under the HNZPTA will be sought or has been granted;<br>(iv) any unrecorded archaeological sites or post-1900 heritage sites within the Designation, which shall also be documented and recorded;<br>(v) roles, responsibilities and contact details of Project personnel, Council and HNZPT representatives, Mana Whenua representatives, and relevant agencies involved with heritage and archaeological matters including surveys, monitoring of Construction Works, compliance with AUP accidental discovery rule, and monitoring of conditions;<br>(vi) specific areas to be investigated, monitored and recorded to the extent these are directly affected by the Project;<br>(vii) The proposed methodology for investigating and recording post-1900 historic heritage sites (including buildings) that need to be destroyed, demolished or relocated, including details of their condition, measures to mitigate any adverse effects and timeframe for implementing the proposed methodology, in accordance with the HNZPT Archaeological Guidelines Series No.1: Investigation and Recording of Buildings and Standing Structures (November 2018), or any subsequent version;<br>(viii) methods to acknowledge cultural values identified through Condition 14 where archaeological sites also involve ngā taonga tuku iho (treasures handed down by our ancestors) and where feasible and practicable to do so;<br>(ix) methods for avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects on historic heritage places and sites within the Designation during Construction Works as far as practicable. These methods shall include, but are not limited to:<br>A. security fencing or hoardings around historic heritage places to protect them from damage during construction or unauthorised access;<br>B. measures to mitigate adverse effects on historic heritage sites that achieve positive historic heritage outcomes such as increased public awareness and interpretation signage; and<br>C. training requirements and inductions for contractors and subcontractors on historic heritage places within the Designation, legal obligations relating to unexpected discoveries and the AUP Accidental Discovery Rule (E11.6.1). The training shall be undertaken prior to the Start of Construction, under the guidance of a Suitably Qualified Person and Mana Whenua representatives (to the extent the training relates to cultural values identified under Condition 14).<br><br>**Advice note:**<br>**Accidental Discoveries**<br>The requirements for accidental discoveries of heritage items are set out in Rule E11.6.1 of the AUP and in the NZTA Minimum Standard P45 Accidental Archaeological Discovery Specification, or any subsequent version. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 28. | **Pre-Construction Ecological Survey**<br>(a) At the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, an updated ecological survey shall be undertaken by a Suitably Qualified Person. The purpose of the survey is to inform ecological management by:<br>(i) confirming whether the species of value within the Identified Biodiversity Areas recorded in the Identified Biodiversity Area Schedule 2 are still present; and<br>(ii) confirming whether the project will or may have a moderate or greater level of ecological effect on ecological species of value, prior to implementation of impact management measures with the level of effect to be determined in accordance with Table 10 of the EIANZ guidelines as included in Schedule 3 to these conditions (or subsequent updated version of the table).<br>(b) If the ecological survey confirms the presence of ecological species of value in accordance with Condition 28(a)(i) and that effects are likely in accordance with Condition 28(a)(ii) then an Ecological Management Plan (or Plans) shall be prepared in accordance with Condition 29 for these areas (Confirmed Biodiversity Areas). |

**29. Ecological Management Plan (EMP)**

(a) An EMP shall be prepared for any Confirmed Biodiversity Areas (confirmed through Condition 28) prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the EMP is to minimise effects of the Project on the ecological features of value of Confirmed Biodiversity Areas as far as practicable.

(b) To achieve the objective, the EMP shall set out the methods which may include:

(i) If an EMP is required in accordance with Condition 28(b) for the presence of long tail bats:

A. measures to minimise as far as practicable, disturbance from construction activities within the vicinity of any active long tail bat roosts (including maternity) that are discovered through survey until such roosts are confirmed to be vacant of bats;

B. how the timing of any construction work in the vicinity of any maternity long tail bat roosts will be limited to outside the bat maternity period (between December and March) where reasonably practicable;

C. details of areas where vegetation is to be retained where practicable for the purposes of the connectivity of long tail bats;

D. details of how bat connectivity will be provided and maintained (e.g. through the presence of suitable indigenous or exotic trees or artificial alternatives). This could include identification of areas and timeframes for establishment of advance restoration / mitigation planting taking into account land ownership, accessibility and the timing of available funding, measures to manage the effects of light spill on bat connectivity as far as practicable; and

E. where mitigation to minimise effects is not practicable, details of any offsetting proposed.

(ii) If an EMP is required in accordance with Condition 28(b) for the presence of threatened or at risk wetland birds:

A. how the timing of any Construction Works shall be undertaken outside of the bird breeding season (September to February) where practicable.

B. where works are required within the Confirmed Biodiversity Area during the bird season, methods to minimise adverse effects on Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds;

C. undertaking a nesting bird survey of Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds prior to any Construction Works taking place within a 50m radius of any identified Wetlands (including establishment of construction areas adjacent to Wetlands). Surveys should be repeated at the beginning of each wetland bird breeding season and following periods of construction inactivity;

D. what protection and buffer measures will be provided where nesting Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds are identified within 50m of any construction area (including laydown areas). Measures could include:

a. a 20 m buffer area around the nest location and retaining vegetation. The buffer areas should be demarcated where necessary to protect birds from encroachment. This might include the use of marker poles, tape and signage;

b. monitoring of the nesting Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds by a Suitably Qualified Person. Construction works within the 20m nesting buffer areas should not occur until the Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds have fledged from the nest location (approximately 30 days from egg laying to fledging) as confirmed by a Suitably Qualified Person;

c. minimising the disturbance from the works if construction works are required within 50 m of a nest, as advised by a Suitably Qualified Person;

d. adopting a 10m setback where practicable, between the edge of Wetlands and construction areas (along the edge of the stockpile / laydown area); and

e. minimising light spill from construction areas into Wetlands

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| | (c) The EMP shall be consistent with any ecological management measures to be undertaken in compliance with conditions of any regional resource consents granted for the Project.<br>**Advice note:**<br>Depending on the potential effects of the Project, the regional consents for the Project may include the following monitoring and management plans:<br>(i) Stream and/or wetland restoration plans;<br>(ii) Vegetation restoration plans; and<br>(iii) Fauna management plans (eg avifauna, herpetofauna, bats). |
| **30.** | **Tree Management Plan (TMP)**<br>(a) Prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work, a TMP shall be prepared. The objective of the TMP is to avoid, remedy or mitigate effects of construction activities on trees identified as protected or notable in the Auckland Unitary Plan.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the TMP shall:<br>(i) confirm the trees that will be affected by the project work and are identified as protected or notable in the Auckland Unitary Plan; and<br>(ii) demonstrate how the design and location of project works has avoided, remedied or mitigated any effects on any tree identified in 30(b)(i) above. This may include:<br>A. any opportunities to relocate listed trees where practicable.<br>B. planting to replace trees that require removal (with reference to the ULDMP planting design details in Condition 18);<br>C. tree protection zones and tree protection measures such as protective fencing, ground protection and physical protection of roots, trunks and branches; and<br>D. methods for work within the rootzone of trees that are to be retained in line with accepted arboricultural standards.<br>(iii) demonstrate how the tree management measures (outlined in 30(b)(ii)A – D above) are consistent with conditions of any resource consents granted for the project in relation to managing construction effects on trees. |
| **31.** | **Network Utility Management Plan (NUMP)**<br>(a) A NUMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the NUMP is to set out a framework for protecting, relocating and working in proximity to existing network utilities.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the NUMP shall include methods to:<br>(i) provide access for maintenance at all reasonable times, or emergency works at all times during construction activities;<br>(ii) protect and where necessary, relocate existing network utilities;<br>(iii) manage the effects of dust and any other material potentially resulting from construction activities and able to cause material damage, beyond normal wear and tear to overhead transmission lines in the Project area;<br>(iv) demonstrate compliance with relevant standards and Codes of Practice including, where relevant, the NZECP 34:2001 New Zealand Electrical Code of Practice for Electrical Safe Distances 2001; AS/NZS 4853:2012 Electrical hazards on Metallic Pipelines; and AS/NZS 2885 Pipelines – Gas and Liquid Petroleum.<br>(c) The NUMP shall include methods (including timing) to protect and where required safely relocate the International Cable.<br>(d) The NUMP shall be prepared in consultation with the relevant Network Utility Operator(s) who have existing assets that are directly affected by the Project.<br>(e) Any comments received from the Network Utility Operator shall be considered when finalising the NUMP.<br>(f) Any amendments to the NUMP related to the assets of a Network Utility Operator shall be prepared in consultation with that asset owner. |
| | **Operational conditions** |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **32.** | **Low Noise Road Surface**<br>(a) An Open Graded Porous Asphalt (OGPA) pavement or a pavement with a similar or better noise reduction characteristics shall be implemented within 12 months of completion of construction of the Project.<br>(b) The surfacing in (a) above shall be maintained to retain the noise reduction performance as far as practicable. |
| | **Traffic Noise**<br>For the purposes of Conditions 33 to 46:<br>(a) Building-Modification Mitigation – has the same meaning as in NZS 6806;<br>(b) Design year has the same meaning as in NZS 6806;<br>(c) Detailed Mitigation Options – means the fully detailed design of the Selected Mitigation Options, with all practical issues addressed;<br>(d) Habitable Space – has the same meaning as in NZS 6806;<br>(e) Identified Noise Criteria Category – means the Noise Criteria Category for a PPF identified in Schedule 4: Identified PPFs Noise Criteria Categories;<br>(f) Mitigation – has the same meaning as in NZS 6806:2010 Acoustics – Road-traffic noise – New and altered roads;<br>(g) Noise Criteria Categories – means the groups of preference for sound levels established in accordance with NZS 6806 when determining the Best Practicable Option for noise mitigation (i.e. Categories A, B and C);<br>(h) NZS 6806 – means New Zealand Standard NZS 6806:2010 Acoustics – Road-traffic noise – New and altered roads;<br>(i) P40 – means Transport Agency NZTA P40:2014 Specification for noise mitigation<br>(j) Protected Premises and Facilities (PPFs) – means only the premises and facilities identified in Schedule 4: PPFs Noise Criteria Categories;<br>(k) Selected Mitigation Options – means the preferred mitigation option resulting from a Best Practicable Option assessment undertaken in accordance with NZS 6806; and<br>(l) Structural Mitigation – has the same meaning as in NZS 6806. |
| **33.** | The Noise Criteria Categories identified in Schedule 4: PPFs Noise Criteria Categories at each of the PPFs shall be achieved where practicable and subject to Conditions 33 to 46 (all traffic noise conditions).<br><br>The Noise Criteria Categories do not need to be complied with at a PPF where:<br>(a) The PPF no longer exists; or<br>(b) Agreement of the landowner has been obtained confirming that the Noise Criteria Category does not need to be met.<br><br>Achievement of the Noise Criteria Categories for PPFs shall be by reference to a traffic forecast for a high growth scenario in a design year at least 10 years after the programmed opening of the Project. |
| **34.** | As part of the detailed design of the Project, a Suitably Qualified Person shall determine the Selected Mitigation Options for the PPFs identified on Schedule 4: PPFs Noise Criteria Categories. |
| **35.** | Prior to construction of the Project, a Suitably Qualified Person shall develop the Detailed Mitigation Options for the PPFs identified in Schedule 4 PPFs Noise Criteria Categories, taking into account the Selected Mitigation Options. |
| **36.** | If the Detailed Mitigation Options would result in the Identified Noise Criteria Category changing to a less stringent Category, e.g. from Category A to B or Category B to C, at any relevant PPF, a Suitably Qualified Person shall provide confirmation to the Manager that the Detailed Mitigation Option would be consistent with adopting the Best Practicable Option in accordance with NZS 6806 prior to implementation. |
| **37.** | Prior to the Start of Construction, a Noise Mitigation Plan written in accordance with P40 shall be provided to the Manager for information. |
| **38.** | The Detailed Mitigation Options shall be implemented prior to Completion of Construction of the Project, with the exception of any low-noise road surfaces, which shall be implemented within 12 months of Completion of Construction. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **39.** | Prior to the Start of Construction, a Suitably Qualified Person shall identify those PPFs which, following implementation of all the Detailed Mitigation Options, will not be Noise Criteria Categories A or B and where Building-Modification Mitigation might be required to achieve 40 dB LAeq(24h) inside Habitable Spaces ('Category C Buildings'). |
| **40.** | Prior to the Start of Construction in the vicinity of each Category C Building, the Requiring Authority shall write to the owner of the Category C Building requesting entry to assess the noise reduction performance of the existing building envelope. If the building owner agrees to entry within 12 months of the date of the Requiring Authority's letter, the Requiring Authority shall instruct a Suitably Qualified Person to visit the building and assess the noise reduction performance of the existing building envelope. |
| **41.** | For each Category C Building identified, the Requiring Authority is deemed to have complied with Condition 40 above if:<br>(a) The Requiring Authority's Suitably Qualified Person has visited the building and assessed the noise reduction performance of the building envelope; or<br>(b) The building owner agreed to entry, but the Requiring Authority could not gain entry for some reason (such as entry denied by a tenant); or<br>(c) The building owner did not agree to entry within 12 months of the date of the Requiring Authority's letter sent in accordance with Condition 40 above (including where the owner did not respond within that period); or<br>(d) The building owner cannot, after reasonable enquiry, be found prior to Completion of Construction of the Project.<br>If any of (b) to (d) above apply to a Category C Building, the Requiring Authority is not required to implement Building-Modification Mitigation to that building. |
| **42.** | Subject to Condition 41 above, within six months of the assessment undertaken in accordance with Condition 40, the Requiring Authority shall write to the owner of each Category C Building advising:<br>(a) If Building-Modification Mitigation is required to achieve 40 dB LAeq(24h) inside habitable spaces; and<br>(b) The options available for Building-Modification Mitigation to the building, if required; and<br>(c) That the owner has three months to decide whether to accept Building-Modification Mitigation to the building and to advise which option for Building-Modification Mitigation the owner prefers, if the Requiring Authority has advised that more than one option is available. |
| **43.** | Once an agreement on Building-Modification Mitigation is reached between the Requiring Authority and the owner of a Category C Building, the mitigation shall be implemented, including any third party authorisations required, in a reasonable and practical timeframe agreed between the Requiring Authority and the owner. |
| **44.** | Subject to Condition 41, where Building-Modification Mitigation is required, the Requiring Authority is deemed to have complied with Condition 43 if:<br>(a) The Requiring Authority has completed Building Modification Mitigation to the building; or<br>(b) An alternative agreement for mitigation is reached between the Requiring Authority and the building owner; or<br>(c) The building owner did not accept the Requiring Authority's offer to implement Building-Modification Mitigation within three months of the date of the Requiring Authority's letter sent in accordance with Condition 41 (including where the owner did not respond within that period); or<br>(d) The building owner cannot, after reasonable enquiry, be found prior to Completion of Construction of the Project. |
| **45.** | Within 12 months of Completion of Construction of the Project, a post-construction review report written in accordance with P40 Specification for Noise Mitigation 2014 shall be provided to the Manager. |
| **46.** | The Detailed Mitigation Options shall be maintained so they retain their noise reduction performance as far as practicable |

## Attachments

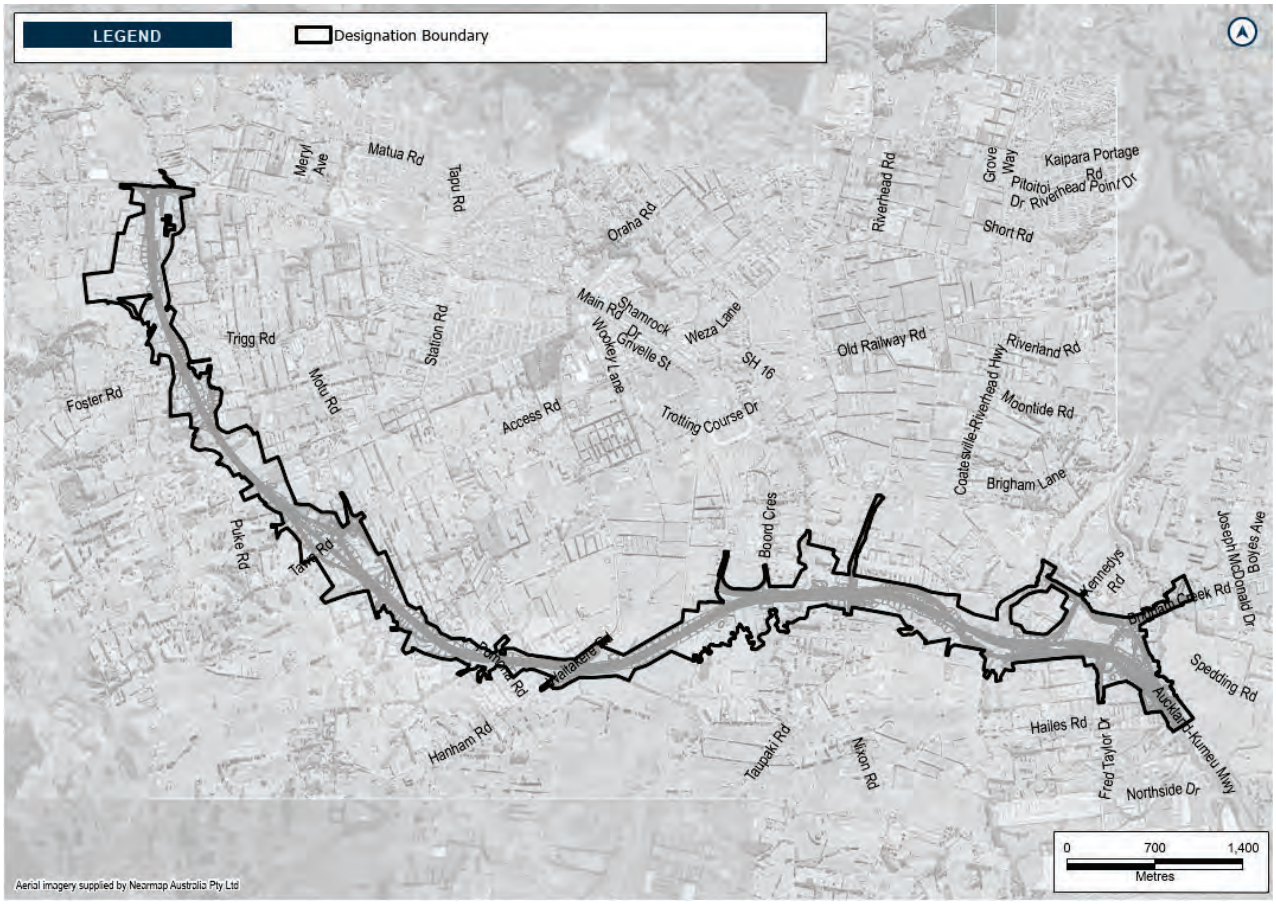
## Schedule 1: General Accordance Plans and Information

### Project Description

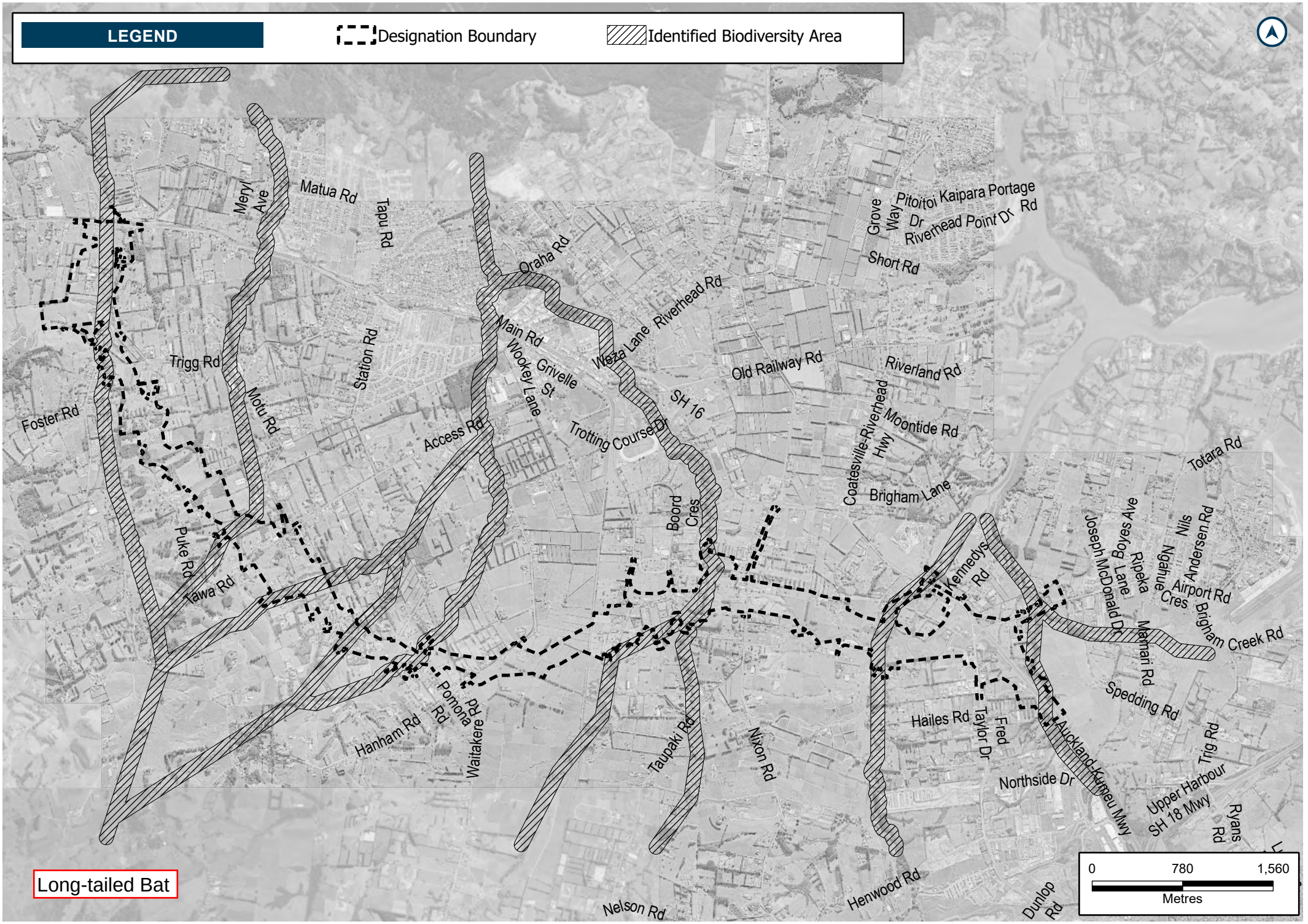
The proposed work is the construction, operation, and maintenance of a state highway in North West Auckland, from State Highway 16 near Foster Road, connecting at Tawa Road, to State Highway 16 at Brigham Creek Interchange, including active transport facilities and associated infrastructure. The proposed work is shown in the following Concept Plan and includes:

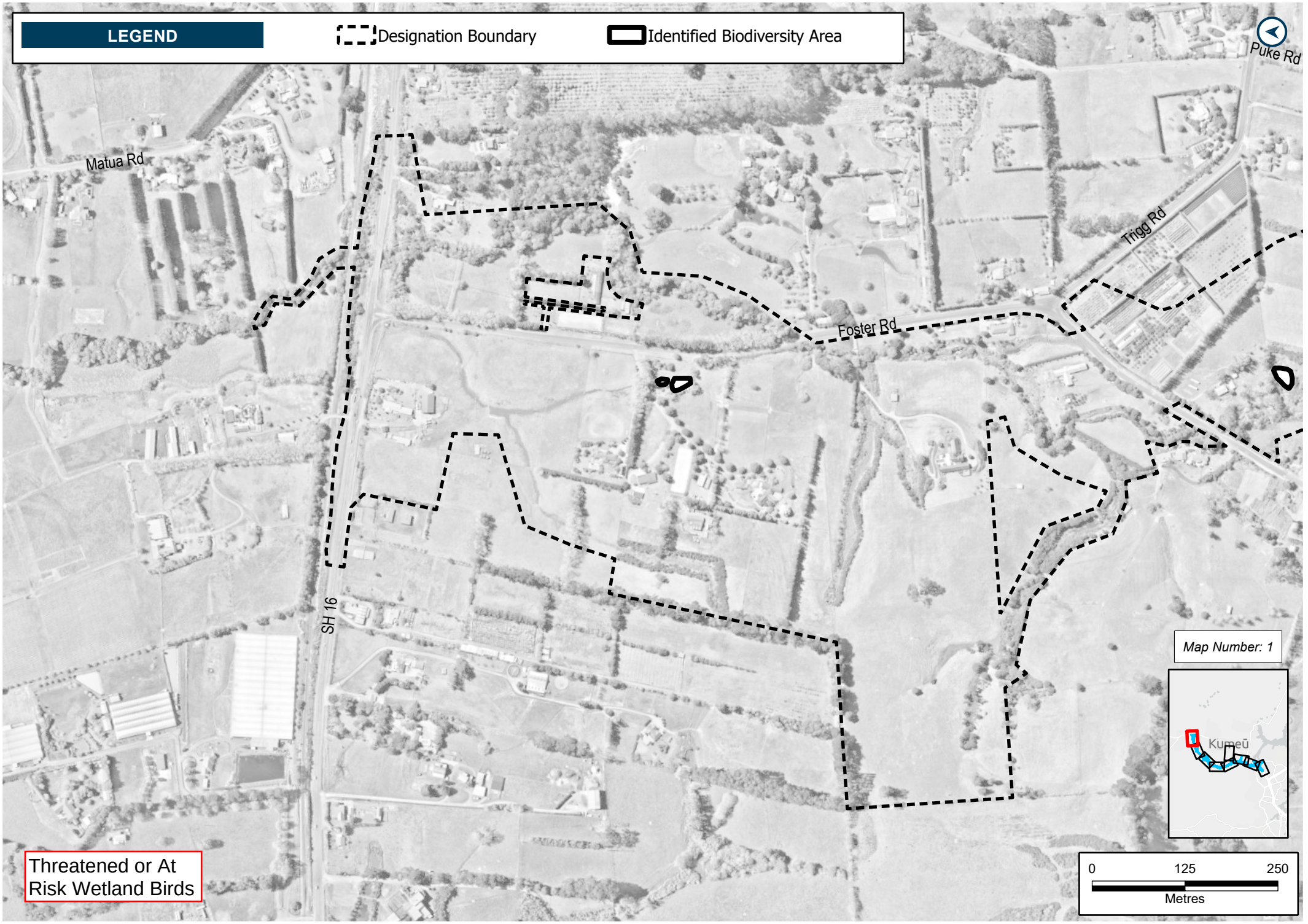
(a) A new transport corridor, including public transport and active transport facilities;
(b) Associated works including intersections, interchanges, bridges, embankments, retaining, culverts, stormwater management systems;
(c) Changes to local roads, where the proposed work intersects with local roads; and
(d) Construction activities, including vegetation removal, construction compounds, laydown areas, bridge works area, construction traffic management and the re-grade of driveways.

### Concept Plan

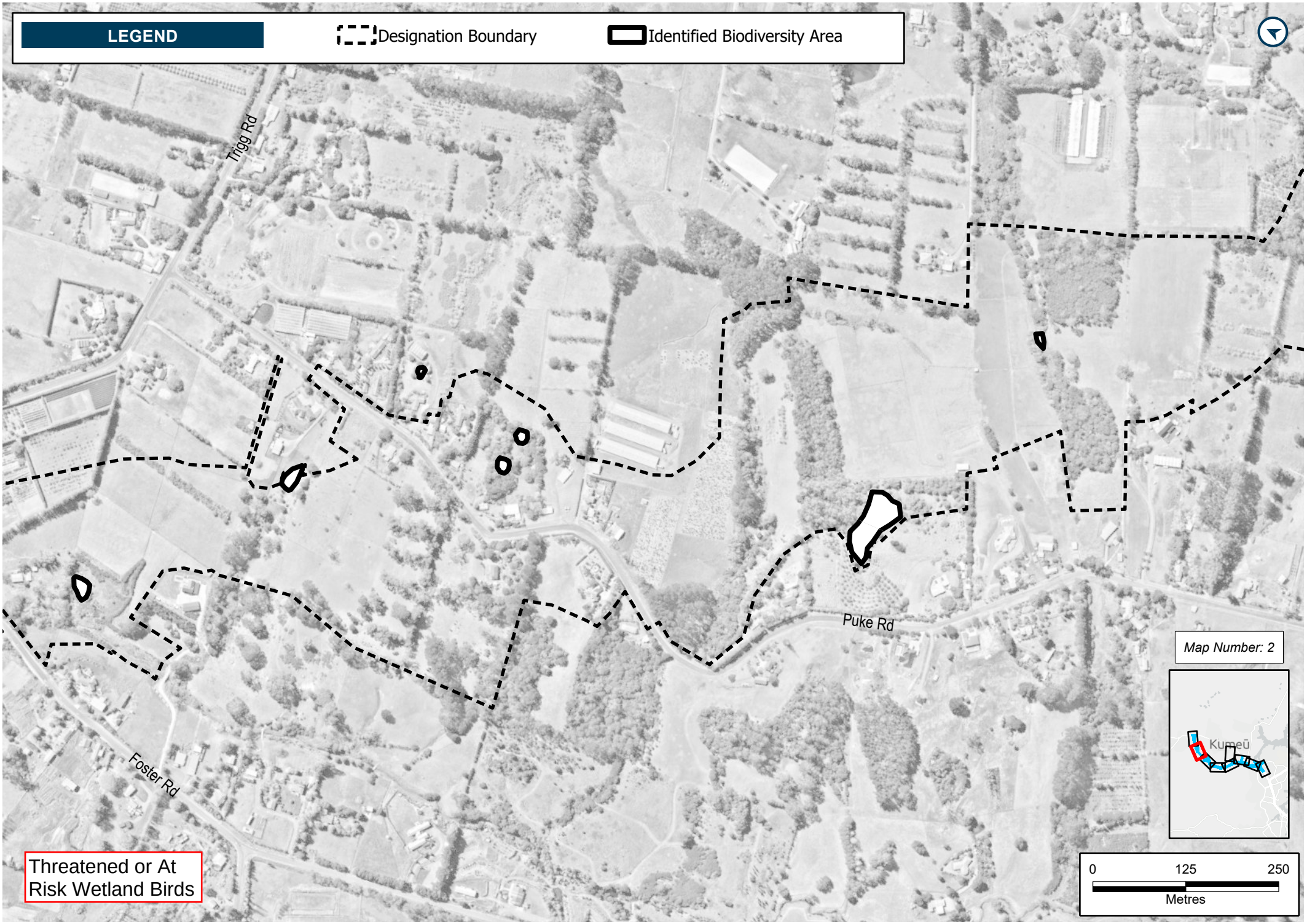


**Schedule 2: Identified Biodiversity Areas**

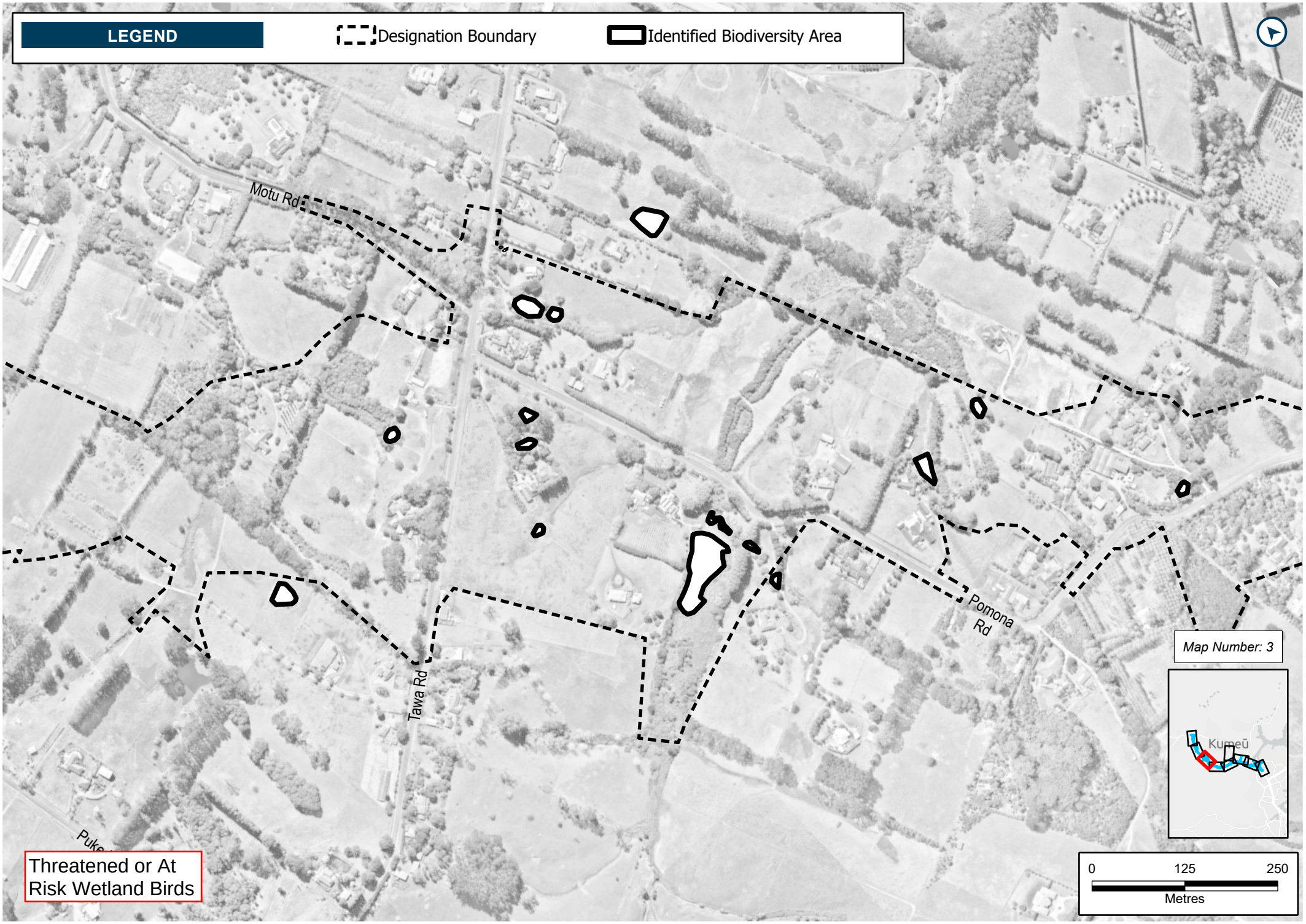

LEGEND
Designation Boundary
Identified Biodiversity Area
Long-tailed Bat
Matua Rd
Tapu Rd
Meryl Ave
Oraha Rd
Main Rd
Wookey Lane
Grivelle St
Station Rd
Trigg Rd
Motu Rd
Foster Rd
Access Rd
Weza Lane
Riverhead Rd
Trotting Course Dr
SH 16
Old Railway Rd
Riverland Rd
Moontide Rd
Coatesville-Riverhead Hwy
Brigham Lane
Boord Cres
Short Rd
Grove Way
Pitoitoi Kaipara Portage Dr
Riverhead Point Dr Rd
Totara Rd
Nils Andersen Rd
Ngahue Cres
Ripeka Lane
Boyes Ave
Joseph McDonald Dr
Kennedys Rd
Airport Rd
Brigham Creek Rd
Marnari Rd
Spedding Rd
Trig Rd
Ryans Rd
Upper Harbour SH 18 Mwy
Auckland-Kumeu Mwy
Northside Dr
Hailes Rd
Fred Taylor Dr
Nixon Rd
Taupaki Rd
Waitakere Rd
Pomona Rd
Hanham Rd
Puke Rd
Taiwa Rd
Henwood Rd
Nelson Rd
Dunlop Rd
0
780
1,560
Metres



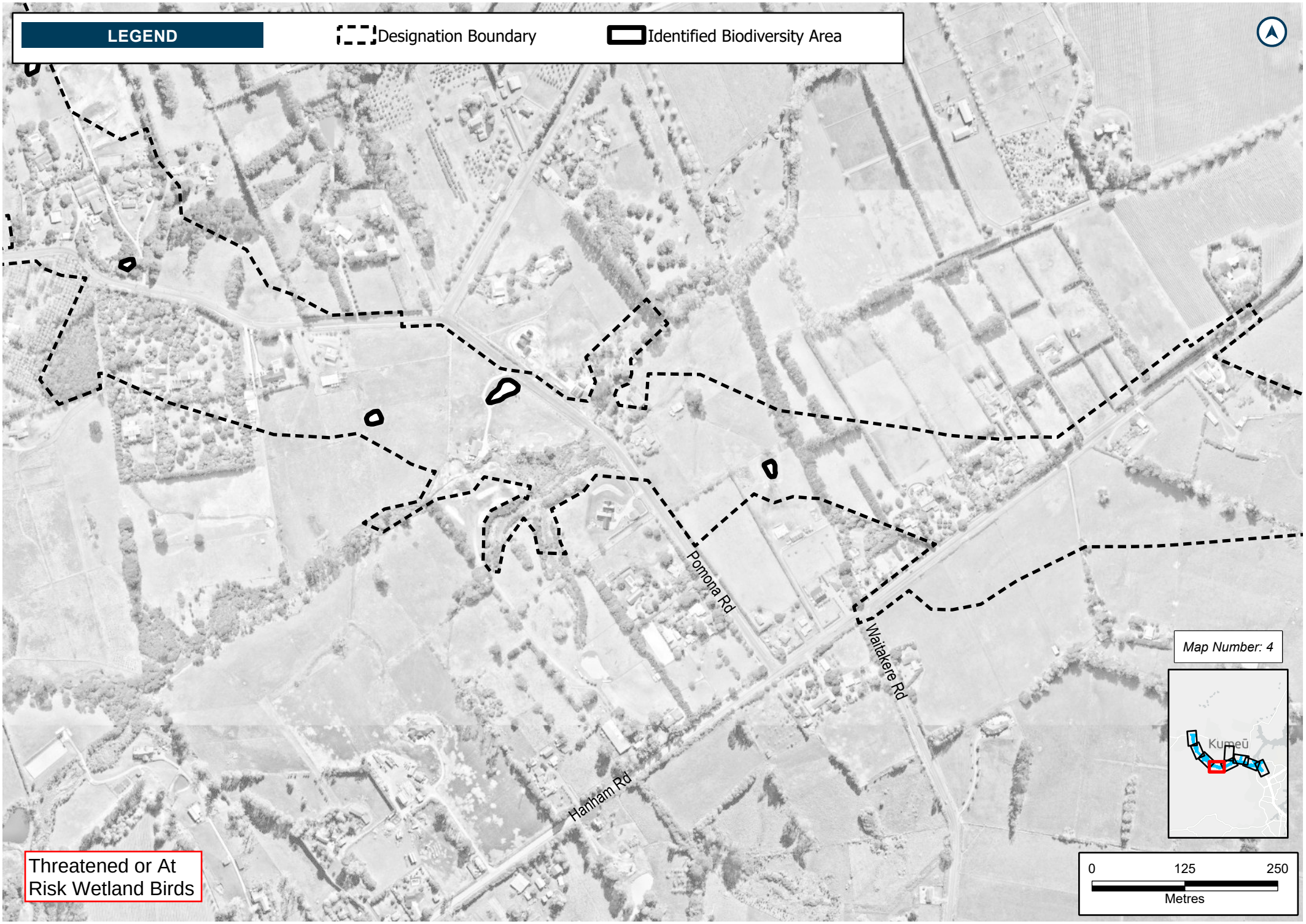

Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-032-Strategic-ASH-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093410\GIS\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx



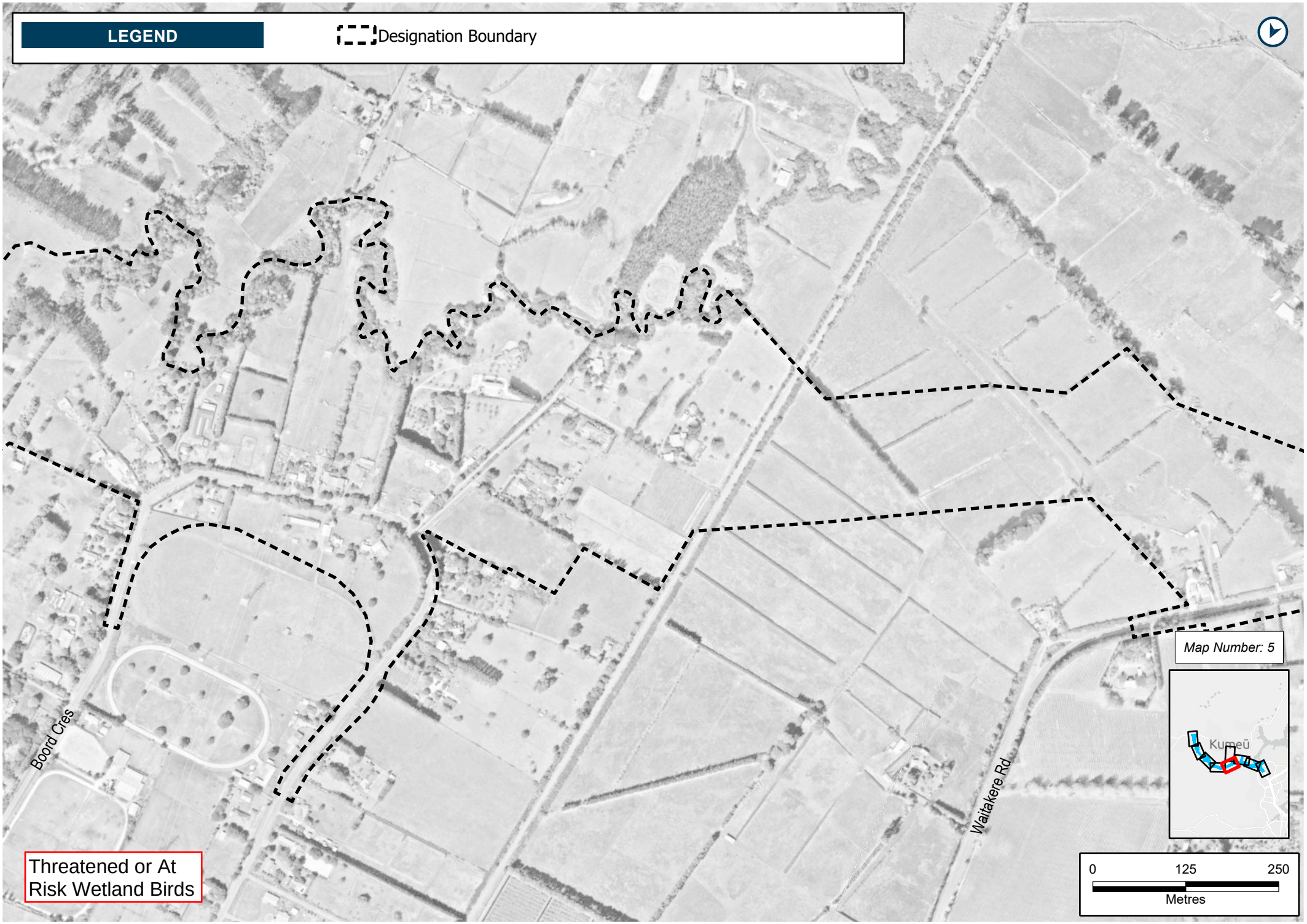

Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-032-Strategic-ASH-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\38\13810934\TGI\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx




Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-032-Strategic-ASH-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093\41TGI\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx




Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-032-Strategic-ASH-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093410\GIS\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx

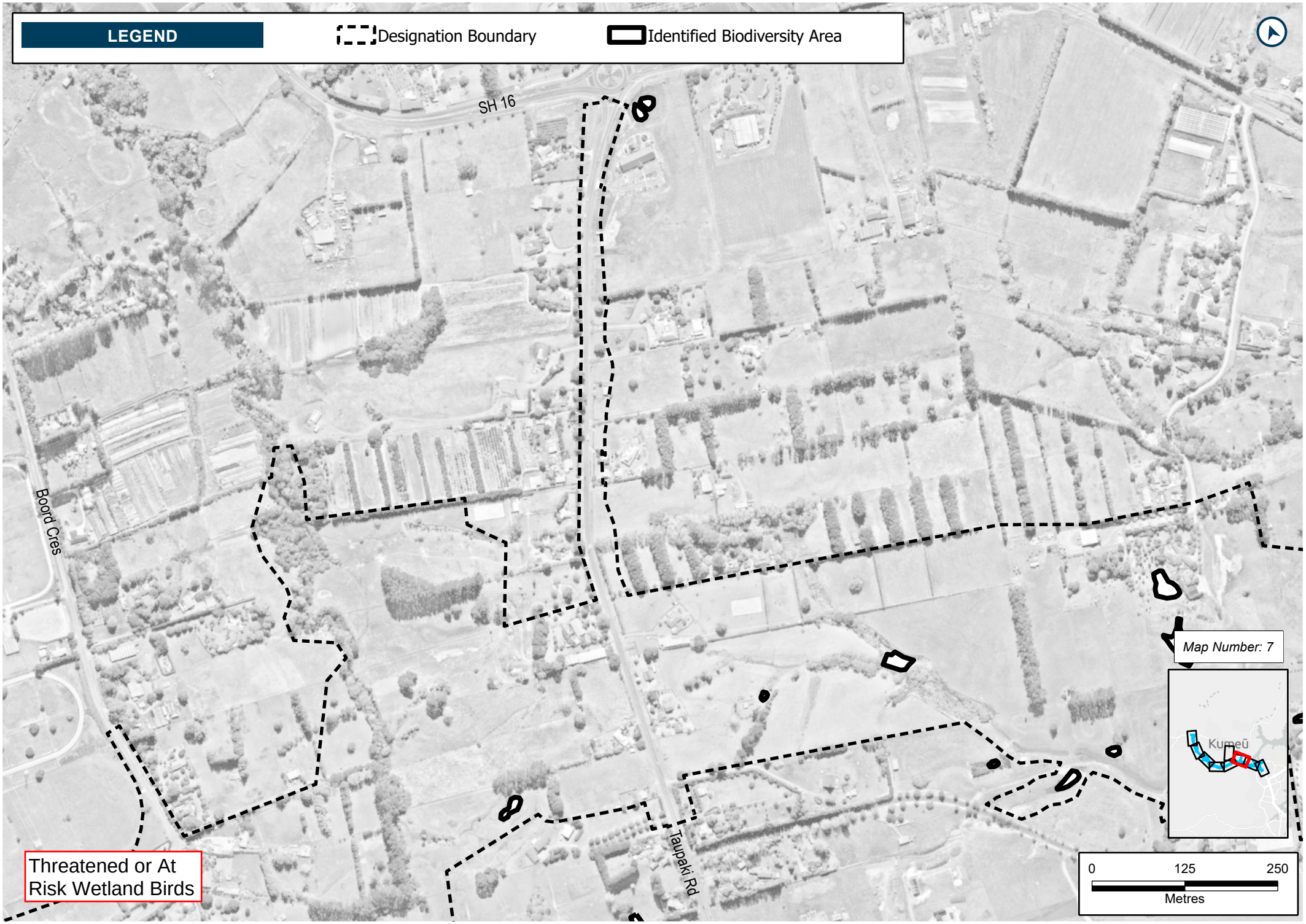



Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-032-Strategic-ASH-Bird-Mitigation

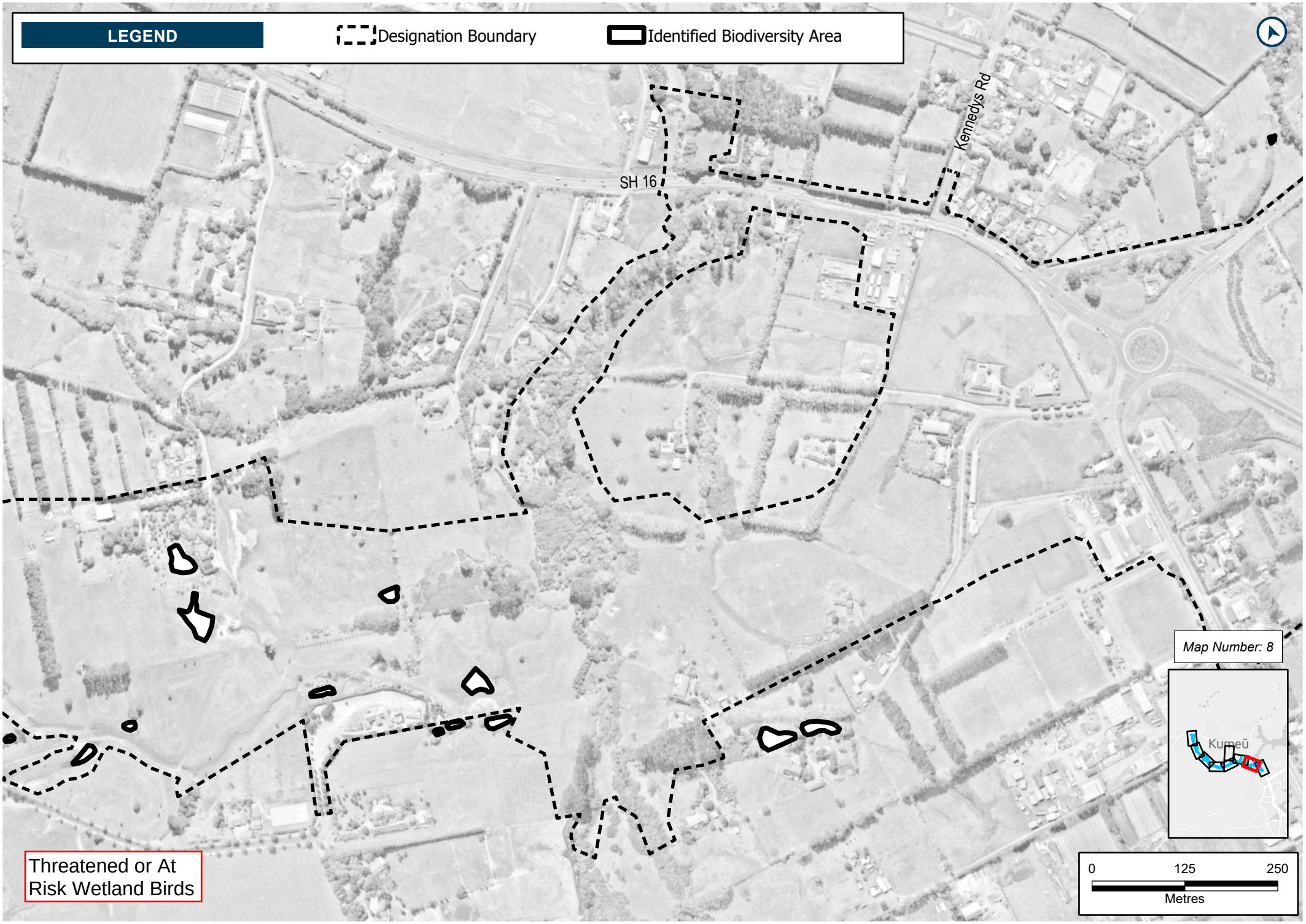
Path: P:\381\381093411\GIS\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx



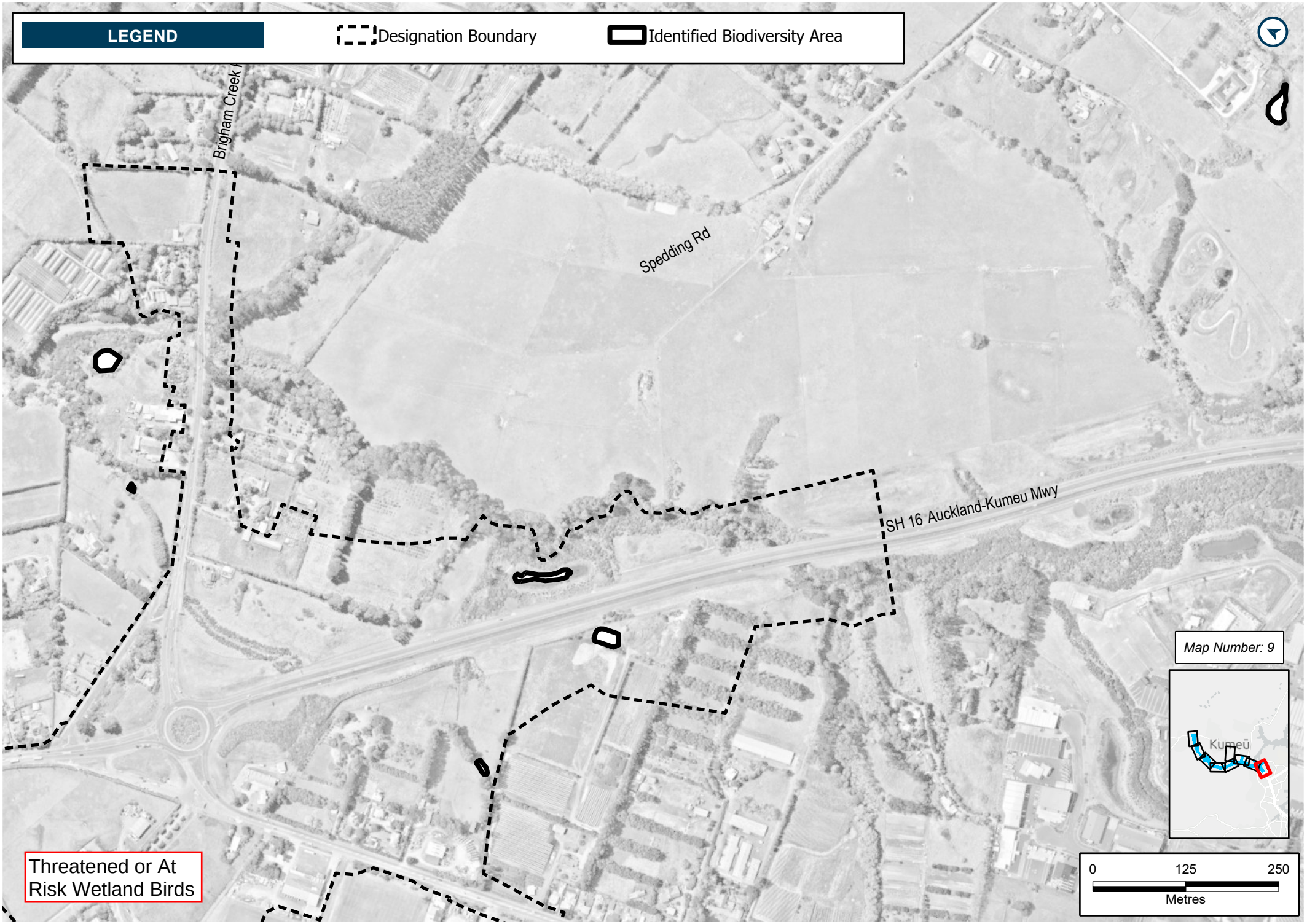

Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-032-Strategic-ASH-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093\41TGI\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx




Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-032-Strategic-ASH-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093\41\GIS\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx




Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-032-Strategic-ASH-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093411\GIS\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx




Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-032-Strategic-ASH-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093\41\GIS\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx

**Schedule 3: Table 10 of the 2018 EIANZ Guidelines**

Criteria for describing level of effects (Adapted from Regini (2000) and Boffa Miskell (2011))

| Ecological Value → <br><br> Magnitude ↓ | Very high | High | Moderate | Low | Negligible |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Very high | Very high | Very high | High | Moderate | Low |
| High | Very high | Very high | Moderate | Low | Very low |
| Moderate | High | High | Moderate | Low | Very low |
| Low | Moderate | Low | Low | Very low | Very low |
| Negligible | Low | Very low | Very low | Very low | Very low |
| Positive | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain |

**Schedule 4: Identified PPFs Noise Criteria Categories**

| Address | New or Altered Road | Noise Criteria Category |
|---|---|---|
| 2 Brigham Creek Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 4 Brigham Creek Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 6 Brigham Creek Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 15 Brigham Creek Road, Whenuapai, Auckland (2) | Altered Road | A |
| 15 Brigham Creek Road, Whenuapai, Auckland (1) | Altered Road | A |
| 23-27 Brigham Creek Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 107 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 121 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 125 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 127 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 129 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 131 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 133 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 135 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 137 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 139 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 141 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 143 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 172 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 1 Kennedys Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 3 Kennedys Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 5 Kennedys Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 9 Kennedys Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 11 Kennedys Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 13 Kennedys Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 15 Kennedys Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 17 Kennedys Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 19 Kennedys Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 2-6 Kennedys Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 17A Kennedys Road, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |

| Address | New or Altered Road | Noise Criteria Category |
|---|---|---|
| 392 Matua Road, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 402 Matua Road, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 392B Matua Road, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 150 Motu Road, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 158 Motu Road, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 164 Motu Road, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 171 State Highway 16, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 173 State Highway 16, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 175 State Highway 16, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 177 State Highway 16, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 179 State Highway 16, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 181 State Highway 16, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 218 State Highway 16, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 222 State Highway 16, Whenuapai, Auckland | Altered Road | A |
| 677 State Highway 16, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 693 State Highway 16, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 695 State Highway 16, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 726 State Highway 16, Kumeū (2) | Altered Road | A |
| 726 State Highway 16, Kumeū (1) | Altered Road | A |
| 728 State Highway 16, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 761 State Highway 16, Kumeū (2) | Altered Road | A |
| 761 State Highway 16, Kumeū (1) | Altered Road | A |
| 763 State Highway 16, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 59 Tawa Road, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 63 Tawa Road, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 66 Tawa Road, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 73 Tawa Road, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 76 Tawa Road, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 79 Tawa Road, Kumeū | Altered Road | A |
| 83 Tawa Road, Kumeū (2) | Altered Road | A |

| Address | New or Altered Road | Noise Criteria Category |
|---|---|---|
| 83 Tawa Road, Kumeū (1) | Altered Road | A |
| 86 Tawa Road, Kumeū (2) | Altered Road | A |
| 86 Tawa Road, Kumeū (1) | Altered Road | A |
| 186 Boord Crescent, Kumeū | New Road | B |
| 4 Dysart Lane, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 81 Foster Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 116 Foster Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 131 Foster Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 196 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | New Road | A |
| 198 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | New Road | A |
| 208 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | New Road | A |
| 210 Fred Taylor Drive, Whenuapai, Auckland | New Road | A |
| 2 Hanham Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 6 Hanham Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 8 Hanham Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 9 Hanham Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 14 Joseph Dunstan Drive, Taupaki | New Road | A |
| 28 Pomona Road, Kumeū | New Road | B |
| 48 Pomona Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 66 Pomona Road, Kumeū | New Road | B |
| 90 Pomona Road, Kumeū | New Road | B |
| 94 Pomona Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 95 Pomona Road, Kumeū | New Road | B |
| 96 Pomona Road, Kumeū | New Road | B |
| 114 Pomona Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 123 Pomona Road, Kumeū (2) | New Road | B |
| 123 Pomona Road, Kumeū (1) | New Road | A |
| 151 Pomona Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 191 Pomona Road, Kumeū | New Road | B |
| 194 Pomona Road, Kumeū | New Road | B |

| Address | New or Altered Road | Noise Criteria Category |
|---|---|---|
| 212 Pomona Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 214 Pomona Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 218 Pomona Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 18 Puke Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 21 Puke Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 22 Puke Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 27 Puke Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 37 Puke Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 80 Puke Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 104 Puke Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 107 Puke Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 133 Puke Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 139 Puke Road, Kumeū (2) | New Road | B |
| 139 Puke Road, Kumeū (1) | New Road | A |
| 145 Puke Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 151 Puke Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 157 Puke Road, Kumeū | New Road | B |
| 284 State Highway 16, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 362 Taupaki Road, Taupaki | New Road | A |
| 364 Taupaki Road, Taupaki | New Road | A |
| 367 Taupaki Road, Taupaki | New Road | A |
| 370 Taupaki Road, Taupaki | New Road | A |
| 374 Taupaki Road, Taupaki | New Road | B |
| 375 Taupaki Road, Taupaki | New Road | A |
| 377 Taupaki Road, Taupaki | New Road | B |
| 405 Taupaki Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 137 Tawa Road, Kumeū | New Road | B |
| 141 Tawa Road, Kumeū | New Road | B |
| 145 Tawa Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 148 Tawa Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |

| Address | New or Altered Road | Noise Criteria Category |
|---|---|---|
| 154 Tawa Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 155 Tawa Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 176 Tawa Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 227 Trigg Road, Kumeū (2) | New Road | A |
| 227 Trigg Road, Kumeū (1) | New Road | A |
| 609 Waitakere Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 637 Waitakere Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 646 Waitakere Road, Kumeū (2) | New Road | B |
| 646 Waitakere Road, Kumeū (1) | New Road | B |
| 670 Waitakere Road, Kumeū | New Road | B |
| 679 Waitakere Road, Kumeū | New Road | B |
| 682 Waitakere Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 710 Waitakere Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |
| 723 Waitakere Road, Kumeū | New Road | A |

**Appendix B – NZTA Modifications to NoR S2 conditions (clean)**

## [# Council to allocate #] – SH16 Main Road

| | |
|---|---|
| Designation Number | 6766 |
| Requiring Authority | New Zealand Transport Agency |
| Location | State Highway 16 from Brigham Creek, Hobsonville to State Highway 1, Wellsford |
| Rollover designation | Yes |
| Legacy Reference | Designation 405, Auckland Council District Plan (Rodney Section) 2011 |
| Lapse Date | Given effect to (i.e. no lapse date) |

# Purpose

State Highway 16.

# Conditions

**Abbreviations and definitions**

| Acronym/Term | Definition |
|---|---|
| Activity sensitive to noise | Any dwelling, visitor accommodation, boarding house, marae, papakāinga, integrated residential development, retirement village, supported residential care, care centre, lecture theatre in a tertiary education facility, classroom in an education facility and healthcare facility with an overnight stay facility |
| AUP | Auckland Unitary Plan |
| BPO or Best Practicable Option | Has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA 1991 |
| CEMP | Construction Environmental Management Plan |
| Certification of material changes to management plans | Confirmation from the Manager that a material change to a management plan has been prepared in accordance with the condition to which it relates.<br>A material change to a management plan shall be deemed certified:<br>(a) where the Requiring Authority has received written confirmation from Council that the material change to the management plan is certified; or<br>(b) ten working days from the submission of the material change to the management plan where no written confirmation of certification has been received |
| CMP | Cultural Monitoring Plan |
| CNVMP | Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan |
| CNVMP Schedule or Schedule | A schedule to the CNVMP |
| Completion of Construction | When construction of the Project (or part of the Project) is complete and it is available for use |
| Confirmed Biodiversity Areas | Areas recorded in the Identified Biodiversity Area Schedule where the ecological values and effects have been confirmed through the ecological survey under Condition 27. |
| Construction Works | Activities undertaken to construct the Project excluding Enabling Works |
| Council | Auckland Council |
| CTMP | Construction Traffic Management Plan |

| | |
|---|---|
| Educational facility | Facility used for education to secondary level<br>Includes:<br>• schools and outdoor education facilities; and<br>• accommodation, administrative, cultural, religious, health, retail and communal facilities accessory to the above<br>Excludes:<br>• care centres; and<br>• tertiary education facilities |
| EIANZ Guidelines | Ecological Impact Assessment: EIANZ guidelines for use in New Zealand: terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems, second edition, dated May 2018 |
| EMP | Ecological Management Plan |
| Enabling works | Includes, but is not limited to, the following and similar activities:<br>(a) geotechnical investigations (including trial embankments);<br>(b) archaeological site investigations;<br>(c) formation of access for geotechnical investigations;<br>(d) establishment of site yards, site entrances and fencing;<br>(e) constructing and sealing site access roads;<br>(f) demolition or removal of buildings and structures;<br>(g) relocation of services; and<br>(h) establishment of mitigation measures (such as erosion and sediment control measures, temporary noise walls, earth bunds and planting) |
| HHMP | Historic Heritage Management Plan |
| HNZPT | Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga |
| HNZPTA | Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 |
| Identified Biodiversity Area | Means an area or areas of features of ecological value where the Project ecologist has identified that the project will potentially have a moderate or greater level of ecological effect, prior to implementation of impact management measures, as determined in accordance with the EIANZ guidelines |
| Manager | The Manager – Resource Consents of the Auckland Council, or authorised delegate |
| Mana Whenua | Mana Whenua as referred to in the conditions are considered to be, but not limited to, the following (in no particular order), who at the time of Notice of Requirement expressed a desire to be involved in the Project:<br>• Te Kawerau ā Maki<br>• Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara<br>• Te Ākitai Waiohua |
| Network Utility Operator | Has the same meaning as set out in section 166 of the RMA |
| NIMP | Network Integration Management Plan |
| NOR | Notice of Requirement |
| North West growth area | Constitutes the Future Urban Zone, or live zoned urban land in Kumeū, Huapai, Redhills, Redhills North, Riverhead and Whenuapai |
| NUMP | Network Utilities Management Plan |
| Outline Plan | An outline plan prepared in accordance with section 176A of the RMA |
| OSMP | Open Space Management Plan |
| Project Liaison Person | The person or persons appointed for the duration of the Project's Construction Works to be the main point of contact for persons wanting information about the Project or affected by the Construction Works |
| Protected Premises and Facilities (PPF) | Protected Premises and Facilities as defined in New Zealand Standard NZS 6806:2010: Acoustics – Road-traffic noise – New and altered roads |

| | |
|---|---|
| Requiring Authority | Has the same meaning as section 166 of the RMA and, for this Designation is New Zealand Transport Agency |
| RMA | Resource Management Act 1991 |
| SCEMP | Stakeholder Communication and Engagement Management Plan |
| Stakeholder | Stakeholders to be identified in accordance with Condition 3, which may include as appropriate:<br>(a) adjacent owners and occupiers;<br>(b) adjacent business owners and operators;<br>(c) central and local government bodies;<br>(d) community groups;<br>(e) developers;<br>(f) development agencies;<br>(g) educational facilities; and<br>(h) network utility operators |
| Stage of Work | Any physical works that require the development of an Outline Plan |
| Start of Construction | The time when Construction Works (excluding Enabling Works) start |
| Suitably Qualified Person | A person (or persons) who can provide sufficient evidence to demonstrate their suitability, experience and competence in the relevant field of expertise |
| TMP | Tree Management Plan |
| ULDMP | Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **General conditions** | |
| | Conditions 1– 30 of this designation shall only apply to the work described in the Project Description and the altered area identified in the Concept Plan in Schedule 1. |
| **1.** | **Activity in General Accordance with Plans and Information**<br>(a) Except as provided for in the conditions below, and subject to final design and Outline Plan(s), works within the designation shall be undertaken in general accordance with the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1<br>(b) Where there is inconsistency between:<br>(i) the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1 and the requirements of the following conditions, the conditions shall prevail;<br>(ii) the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1, and the management plans under the conditions of the designation, the requirements of the management plans shall prevail. |
| **2.** | **Project Information**<br>(a) A project website, or equivalent virtual information source, shall be established as soon as reasonably practicable, and within six months of the inclusion of this designation in the AUP.<br>(b) All directly affected owners and occupiers shall be notified in writing as soon as reasonably practicable once the website or equivalent information source has been established. The project website or virtual information source shall include these conditions and shall provide information on:<br>(i) the status of the Project;<br>(ii) anticipated construction timeframes;<br>(iii) contact details for enquiries;<br>(iv) the implications of the designation for landowners, occupiers and business owners and operators within the designation on how / where they can receive additional support following confirmation of the designation;<br>(v) a subscription service to enable receipt of project updates by email;<br>(vi) when and how to apply for consent for works in the designation under section 176(1)(b) of the RMA; and<br>(vii) how/where to access noise modelling contours to inform development adjacent to the designation.<br>(c) At the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the project website or virtual information source shall be updated to provide information on the likely date for Start of Construction, and any staging of works. |
| **3.** | **Stakeholder Communication and Engagement**<br>(a) At least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the Requiring Authority shall identify:<br>(i) a list of Stakeholders;<br>(ii) a list of properties within the designation which the Requiring Authority does not own or have occupation rights to; and<br>(iii) methods to engage with Stakeholders and the owners and occupiers of properties identified in 3(a)(i) –(ii) above.<br>(b) A record of (a) shall be submitted with an Outline Plan for the relevant Stage of Work. |
| **4.** | **Designation Review**<br>As soon as reasonably practicable following Completion of Construction, the Requiring Authority shall:<br>(i) review the extent of the designation to identify any areas of designated land that it no longer requires for the on-going operation, maintenance or mitigation of effects of the Project; and<br>(ii) give notice to Auckland Council in accordance with section 182 of the RMA for the removal of those parts of the designation identified above. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 5. | **Network Utility Operators and Auckland Council (Section 176 Approval)**<br>(a) Prior to the start of Construction Works, Network Utility Operators with existing infrastructure and Auckland Council in relation to parks will not require written consent under section 176 of the RMA for the following activities:<br>(i) operation, maintenance and repair works;<br>(ii) minor renewal works to existing network utilities or parks necessary for the on-going provision or security of supply of network utility operations or parks operations;<br>(iii) minor works such as new service connections; and<br>(iv) the upgrade and replacement of existing network utilities in the same location with the same or similar effects on the work authorised by the designation as the existing utility.<br>(b) To the extent that a record of written approval is required for the activities listed above, this condition shall constitute written approval. |
| **Pre-construction conditions** | |
| 6. | **Outline Plan**<br>(a) An Outline Plan (or Plans) shall be prepared in accordance with section 176A of the RMA.<br>(b) Outline Plans (or Plan) may be submitted in parts or in stages to address particular activities (e.g. design or construction aspects), or a Stage of Work of the Project.<br>(c) Outline Plans shall include any management plan or plans that are relevant to the management of effects of those activities or Stage of Work, which may include:<br>(i) Construction Environmental Management Plan;<br>(ii) Construction Traffic Management Plan;<br>(iii) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan;<br>(iv) Network Integration Management Plan;<br>(v) Open Space Management Plan<br>(vi) Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan;<br>(vii) Historic Heritage Management Plan;<br>(viii) Ecological Management Plan;<br>(ix) Tree Management Plan; and<br>(x) Network Utilities Management Plan. |
| 7. | **Network Utilities Integration**<br>The Requiring Authority shall consult with Network Utility Operators during the detailed design phase to consider opportunities to enable, or not preclude, the development of new network utility facilities including access to power and ducting within the Project, where practicable to do so. The consultation undertaken, opportunities considered, and whether or not they have been incorporated into the detailed design, shall be summarised in the Outline Plan(s) prepared for the Project. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| | **Flood Hazard**<br>For the purpose of Condition 8<br>(a) AEP – means Annual Exceedance Probability;<br>(b) Existing authorised habitable floor – means the floor level of any room (floor) in a residential building which is authorised and exists at the time the outline plan is submitted, excluding a laundry, bathroom, toilet or any room used solely as an entrance hall, passageway or garage;<br>(c) Flood prone area – means potential ponding areas that may flood and commonly comprise of topographical depression areas. The areas can occur naturally or as a result of constructed features;<br>(d) Maximum Probable Development – is the design case for consideration of future flows allowing for development within a catchment that takes into account the maximum impervious surface limits of the current zone or if the land is zoned Future Urban in the AUP, the probable level of development arising from zone changes;<br>(e) Pre-Project development – means existing site condition prior to the Project (including existing buildings and roadways); and<br>(f) Post-Project development – means site condition after the Project has been completed (including existing and new buildings and roadways). |
| **8.** | **Flood Hazard**<br>(a) The Project shall be designed to achieve the following flood risk outcomes:<br>(i) no increase in flood levels in a 1% AEP event for existing authorised habitable floors that are already subject to flooding or have a freeboard less than 500mm;<br>(ii) no increase in flood levels in a 1% AEP event for existing authorised community, commercial, industrial and network utility building floors that are already subject to flooding or have a freeboard less than 300mm;<br>(iii) maximum of 50mm increase in water level in a 1% AEP event outside and adjacent to the designation boundaries between the pre and post Project scenarios; and<br>(iv) no increase of Flood Hazard for the main access to authorised habitable dwellings existing at time the Outline Plan is submitted. The assessment shall be undertaken for the 1% AEP rainfall event.<br>(v) Where Flood Hazard is:<br>A. velocity x depth greater than or equal to 0.6; or<br>B. depth greater than 0.5m; or<br>C. velocity greater than 2m/s.<br>(b) Compliance with this condition shall be demonstrated in the Outline Plan, which shall include flood modelling of the pre-Project and post-Project 1% AEP flood levels (for Maximum Probable Development land use with allowances for climate change).<br>(c) Where the above outcomes can be achieved through alternative measures outside of the designation such as flood stop banks, flood walls, raising existing authorised habitable floor level and new overland flow paths or varied through agreement with the relevant landowner, confirmation shall be provided that any necessary landowner and statutory approvals have been obtained for that work or alternative outcome. |
| **9.** | **Existing property access**<br>Prior to submission of the Outline Plan, consultation shall be undertaken with landowners and occupiers whose vehicle access to their property from roads that are not a state highway will be altered by the project. The Outline Plan shall demonstrate how safe reconfigured or alternate access will be provided, unless otherwise addressed with the affected landowner. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 10. | **Management Plans**<br>(a) Any management plan shall:<br>(i) be prepared and implemented in accordance with the relevant management plan condition;<br>(ii) be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person(s);<br>(iii) include sufficient detail relating to the management of effects associated with the relevant activities and/or Stage of Work to which it relates;<br>(iv) summarise comments received from Mana Whenua and stakeholders as required by the relevant management plan condition, along with a summary of where comments have:<br>A. been incorporated; and<br>B. where not incorporated, the reasons why.<br>(v) be submitted as part of an Outline Plan pursuant to section 176A of the RMA, with the exception of SCEMPs and CNVMP Schedules;<br>(vi) once finalised, uploaded to the Project website or equivalent virtual information source.<br>(b) Any management plan developed in accordance with Condition 10 may:<br>(i) be submitted in parts or in stages to address particular activities (e.g. design or construction aspects), a Stage of Work of the Project, or to address specific activities authorised by the designation;<br>(ii) except for material changes, be amended to reflect any changes in design, construction methods or management of effects without further process;<br>(c) If there is a material change required to a management plan which has been submitted with an Outline Plan, the revised part of the plan shall be submitted to the Council as an update to the Outline Plan or for Certification as soon as practicable following identification of the need for a revision;<br>(d) Any material changes to the SCEMP(s) are to be submitted to the Council for information. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 11. | **Stakeholder Communication and Engagement Management Plan (SCEMP)**<br>(a) A SCEMP shall be prepared in consultation with Stakeholders prior to the Start of Construction. The objective of the SCEMP is to identify how the public and Stakeholders will be engaged with throughout Construction Works.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the SCEMP shall include:<br>(i) a list of Stakeholders;<br>(ii) a list of properties within the designation which the Requiring Authority does not own or have occupation rights to;<br>(iii) methods to engage with Stakeholders and the owners of properties identified in 11(b)(ii) above;<br>(iv) the contact details for the Project Liaison Person. These details shall be on the Project website, or equivalent virtual information source, and prominently displayed at the main entrance(s) to the site(s);<br>(v) methods for engaging with Mana Whenua, to be developed in consultation with Mana Whenua;<br>(vi) methods to manage the potential loss of visibility from public spaces, and severance to businesses in the Business - Town Centre Zones, informed by engagement undertaken in accordance with condition 11(b)(i) and (ii). These methods could include (but not be limited to) customer access arrangements, temporary wayfinding and signage;<br>(vii) methods and timing to engage with owners and occupiers whose access is directly affected;<br>(viii) methods to communicate key project milestones and the proposed hours of construction activities including outside of normal working hours and on weekends and public holidays, to the parties identified in 11(b)(i) and(ii) above; and<br>(ix) linkages and cross-references to communication and engagement methods set out in other conditions and management plans where relevant.<br>(c) Any SCEMP prepared for a Stage of Work shall be submitted to Council for information a minimum of ten working days prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. |
| 12. | **Network Integration Management Plan (NIMP)**<br>(a) At least six (6) months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the Requiring Authority shall prepare, in collaboration with other relevant road controlling authorities, a Network Integration Management Plan (NIMP).<br>(b) The objective of the NIMP is to identify how the Project will integrate with the planned transport network in the North West growth area to achieve an effective, efficient and safe land transport system. To achieve this objective, the NIMP shall include details of the:<br>(i) Project implementation approach and any staging of the Project, including design, management and operational matters; and<br>(ii) Sequencing of the Project with the planned transport network, including design, management and operational matters. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 13. | **Cultural Advisory Report**<br>(a) At least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, Mana Whenua shall be invited to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report for the Project. The objective of the Cultural Advisory Report is to assist in understanding and identifying Ngā Taonga Tuku Iho ('treasures handed down by our ancestors') affected by the Project, to inform their management and protection.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the Requiring Authority shall invite Mana Whenua to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report that:<br>(i) identifies the cultural sites, landscapes and values that have the potential to be affected by the construction and operation of the Project;<br>(ii) sets out the desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values;<br>(iii) identifies traditional cultural practices within the area that may be impacted by the Project;<br>(iv) identifies opportunities for restoration and enhancement of identified cultural sites, landscapes and values within the Project area;<br>(v) taking into account the outcomes of 13(b)(i) to (iv) above, identify cultural matters and principles that should be considered in the development of the ULDMP and HHMP, and the CMP referred to in Condition 20;<br>(vi) identifies and (if possible) nominates traditional names along the Project alignment. Noting there may be formal statutory processes outside the Project required in any decision-making.<br>(c) The desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values identified in the Cultural Advisory Report shall be discussed with Mana Whenua and those outcomes reflected in the relevant management plans where practicable;<br>(d) Conditions 13(b) and (c) will cease to apply if:<br>(i) Mana Whenua have been invited to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report by a date at least six months prior to start of Construction Works; and<br>(ii) Mana Whenua have not provided a Cultural Advisory Report within six months prior to start of Construction Works. |
| 14. | **Open Space Management Plan (OSMP)**<br>(a) An OSMP shall be prepared for Huapai Recreation Reserve prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work that will impact on the Huapai Recreation Reserve.<br>(b) Auckland Council Parks shall be invited to participate in the development of the OSMP at least eighteen (18) months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work that will impact on the Huapai Recreation Reserve.<br>(c) The objective of the OSMP is to minimise, as far as practicable, adverse effects on the recreation amenity of the Huapai Recreation Reserve resulting from the Project. To achieve the objective, the OSMP shall include details of:<br>(i) how ongoing access (including walking and cycling) to the Huapai Recreation Reserve during construction will be maintained in accordance with the Construction Traffic Management Plan (Condition 21);<br>(ii) opportunities to coordinate the forward work programme for the Huapai Recreation Reserve, where appropriate, with Auckland Council Parks;<br>(iii) measures to reasonably maintain the existing service level of the affected park, including any temporary or permanent reconfiguration or replacement of park facilities; and<br>(iv) how matters raised by Auckland Council Parks and relevant stakeholders have been incorporated into the OSMP, and where matters have not been incorporated, the reasons why not. |
| | **Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan (ULDMP)** |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **15.** | (a) A ULDMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the ULDMP(s) is to:<br>(i) enable integration of the Project's permanent works into the surrounding landscape and urban context; and<br>(ii) ensure that the Project manages potential adverse landscape and visual effects as far as practicable and contributes to a quality urban environment.<br>(b) Mana Whenua shall be invited to participate in the development of the ULDMP(s) to provide input into relevant cultural landscape and design matters including how desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values identified and discussed in accordance with Condition 13 may be reflected in the ULDMP.<br>(c) Relevant stakeholders shall be invited to participate in the development of the ULDMP at least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work |
| **16.** | (a) To achieve the objective set out in Condition 15, the ULDMP(s) shall provide details of how the project:<br>(i) is designed to integrate with the adjacent urban (or proposed urban) and landscape context, including the surrounding existing or proposed topography, urban environment (i.e. centres and density of built form), natural environment, landscape character and open space zones (including Huapai Recreation Reserve);<br>(ii) provides appropriate walking and cycling connectivity to, and interfaces with, existing or proposed adjacent land uses, public transport infrastructure and walking and cycling connections;<br>(iii) promotes inclusive access (where appropriate);<br>(iv) promotes a sense of personal safety by aligning with best practice guidelines, such as:<br>A. Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED) principles;<br>B. Safety in Design (SID) requirements; and<br>C. Maintenance in Design (MID) requirements and anti-vandalism/anti-graffiti measures; and<br>(v) Interfaces with the operational areas of commercial premises within business zoned land, including loading areas, internal circulation and car parking, where practicable.<br>(b) The ULDMP shall be prepared in general accordance with:<br>(i) Waka Kotahi Urban Design Guidelines: Bridging the Gap (2013) or any subsequent updated version;<br>(ii) NZTA Landscape Guidelines (2018) or any subsequent updated version; and<br>(iii) Waka Kotahi P39 Standard Specification for Highway Landscape Treatments (2013) or any subsequent updated version. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **17.** | The ULDMP(s) shall include:<br>(a) a concept plan – which depicts the overall landscape and urban design concept, and explain the rationale for the landscape and urban design proposals;<br>(b) developed design concepts, including principles for walking and cycling facilities and public transport; and<br>(c) landscape and urban design details – that cover the following:<br>(i) road design – elements such as intersection form, carriageway gradient and associated earthworks contouring including cut and fill batters, shaped to a natural profile where practicable and appropriate to the surrounding context, and the interface with adjacent land uses and existing roads (including slip lanes), benching, spoil disposal sites, median width and treatment, roadside width and treatment;<br>(ii) roadside elements – such as lighting, fencing, wayfinding and signage;<br>(iii) architectural and landscape treatment of all major structures, including bridges and retaining walls;<br>(iv) architectural and landscape treatment of noise barriers;<br>(v) landscape treatment and planting of permanent stormwater control wetlands and swales;<br>(vi) integration of passenger transport;<br>(vii) pedestrian and cycle facilities including paths, road crossings and dedicated pedestrian/ cycle bridges or underpasses;<br>(viii) historic heritage places with reference to the HHMP (Condition 26); and<br>(ix) re-instatement of construction and site compound areas; and<br>(x) re-instatement of features to be retained such as:<br>A. boundary features;<br>B. landscaping;<br>C. driveways;<br>D. accessways; and<br>E. fences.<br>(d) The ULDMP shall also include the following planting details and maintenance requirements:<br>(i) planting design details including:<br>A. identification of existing trees and vegetation that will be retained with reference to the TMP and Ecological Management Plan. Where practicable, mature trees and native vegetation should be retained;<br>B. street trees, shrubs and ground cover suitable for the location;<br>C. treatment of fill slopes to integrate with adjacent land use, streams, Riparian margins and open space zones;<br>D. identification of any planting requirements under the Ecological Management Plan (Conditions 28) and TMP (Condition 29); and<br>E. integration of any planting requirements required by conditions of any resource consents for the project;<br>(ii) a planting programme including the staging of planting in relation to the construction programme which shall, as far as practicable, include provision for planting within each planting season following completion of works in each Stage of Work; and<br>(iii) detailed specifications relating to the following:<br>A. weed control and clearance;<br>B. pest animal management (to support plant establishment);<br>C. ground preparation (top soiling and decompaction);<br>D. mulching; and<br>E. plant sourcing and planting, including hydroseeding and grassing, and use of eco-sourced species |
| **Specific Outline Plan requirements** | |
| **Construction conditions** | |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 18. | **Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP)**<br>(a) A CEMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the CEMP is to set out the management procedures and construction methods to be undertaken to, avoid, remedy or mitigate any adverse effects associated with Construction Works as far as practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CEMP shall include:<br>(i) the roles and responsibilities of staff and contractors;<br>(ii) details of the site or project manager and the Project Liaison Person, including their contact details (phone and email address);<br>(iii) the Construction Works programmes and the staging approach, and the proposed hours of work;<br>(iv) details of the proposed construction yards including temporary screening when adjacent to residential zones;<br>(v) details of the proposed construction lighting;<br>(vi) methods for controlling dust and the removal of debris and demolition of construction materials from public roads or places;<br>(vii) methods for providing for the health and safety of the general public;<br>(viii) measures to mitigate flood hazard effects such as siting stockpiles out of floodplains, minimising obstruction to flood flows, actions to respond to warnings of heavy rain;<br>(ix) procedures for incident management;<br>(x) location and procedures for the refuelling and maintenance of plant and equipment to avoid discharges of fuels or lubricants to watercourses;<br>(xi) measures to address the storage of fuels, lubricants, hazardous and/or dangerous materials, along with contingency procedures to address emergency spill response(s) and clean up;<br>(xii) summary of measures included to respond to matters raised in engagement, if not already covered above;<br>(xiii) procedures for responding to complaints about Construction Works; and<br>(xiv) methods for amending and updating the CEMP as required. |
| 19. | **Complaints Register**<br>(a) At all times during Construction Works, a record of any complaints received about the Construction Works shall be maintained. The record shall include:<br>(i) the date, time and nature of the complaint;<br>(ii) the name, phone number and address of the complainant (unless the complainant wishes to remain anonymous);<br>(iii) measures taken to respond to the complaint (including a record of the response provided to the complainant) or confirmation of no action if deemed appropriate;<br>(iv) the outcome of the investigation into the complaint; and<br>(v) any other activities in the area, unrelated to the Project that may have contributed to the complaint, such as non-project construction, fires, traffic accidents or unusually dusty conditions generally.<br>(b) A copy of the Complaints Register required by this condition shall be made available to the Manager upon request as soon as practicable after the request is made. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 20. | **Cultural Monitoring Plan (CMP)**<br>(a) Prior to the start of Construction Works, a CMP shall be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person(s) identified in collaboration with Mana Whenua. The objective of the CMP is to identify methods for undertaking cultural monitoring to assist with management of any cultural effects during Construction works.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CMP shall include:<br>(i) Requirements for formal dedication or cultural interpretation to be undertaken prior to start of Construction Works in areas identified as having significance to Mana Whenua;<br>(ii) Requirements and protocols for cultural inductions for contractors and subcontractors;<br>(iii) Identification of activities, sites and areas where cultural monitoring is required during particular Construction Works;<br>(iv) Identification of personnel to undertake cultural monitoring, including any geographic definition of their responsibilities; and<br>(v) Details of personnel to assist with management of any cultural effects identified during cultural monitoring, including implementation of the Accidental Discovery Protocol<br>(c) If Enabling Works involving soil disturbance are undertaken prior to the start of Construction Works, an Enabling Works CMP shall be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person identified in collaboration with Mana Whenua. This plan may be prepared as a standalone Enabling Works CMP or be included in the main Construction Works CMP.<br><br>**Advice note:**<br>Where appropriate, the CMP shall align with the requirements of other conditions of the designation and resource consents for the Project which require monitoring during Construction Works. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 21. | **Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP)**<br>(a) A CTMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the CTMP is to avoid, remedy or mitigate, as far as practicable, adverse construction traffic effects.<br>(b) To achieve this objective, the CTMP shall include:<br>(i) methods to manage the effects of temporary traffic management activities on traffic;<br>(ii) measures to ensure the safety of all transport users;<br>(iii) the estimated numbers, frequencies, routes and timing of traffic movements, including any specific non-working or non-movement hours to manage vehicular and pedestrian traffic near educational facilities or to manage traffic congestion;<br>(iv) site access routes and access points for heavy vehicles, the size and location of parking areas for plant, construction vehicles and the vehicles of workers and visitors;<br>(v) identification of detour routes and other methods to ensure the safe management and maintenance of traffic flows, including public transport services, pedestrians and cyclists;<br>(vi) methods to maintain access to and within property and/or private roads where practicable, or to provide alternative arrangements when it will not be, including details of how access is managed for loading and unloading of goods. Engagement with landowners or occupiers whose access is directly affected shall be undertaken in accordance with the SCEMP;<br>(vii) the management approach to loads on heavy vehicles, including covering loads of fine material, the use of wheel-wash facilities at site exit points and the timely removal of any material deposited or spilled on public roads;<br>(viii) methods that will be undertaken to communicate traffic management measures to affected road users (e.g. residents / public / stakeholders / emergency services);<br>(ix) details of minimum network performance parameters during the construction phase, including any measures to monitor compliance with the performance parameters; and<br>(x) details of any measures proposed to be implemented in the event of thresholds identified in 21(b)(ix) being exceeded.<br>(c) Auditing, monitoring and reporting requirements relating to traffic management activities shall be undertaken in accordance with the New Zealand Guide to Temporary Traffic Management (April 2023) or any subsequent version. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 22. | **Construction Noise Standards**<br>(a) Construction noise shall be measured and assessed in accordance with NZS6803:1999 Acoustics – Construction Noise and shall comply with the noise standards set out in the following table as far as practicable:<br><br>**Table 22-1 Construction Noise Standards**<br><br>(b) Where compliance with the noise standards set out in Table 22-1 is not practicable, the methodology in Condition 25 shall apply. |

| Day of week | Time period | $L_{Aeq(15min)}$ | $L_{AFmax}$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Occupied activity sensitive to noise** | | | |
| Weekday | 0630h - 0730h | 55 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 70 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 65 dB | 80 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| Saturday | 0630h - 0730h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 70 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| Sunday and Public Holidays | 0630h - 0730h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 55 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| **Other occupied buildings** | | | |
| All | 0730h – 1800h | 70 dB | |
| | 1800h – 0730h | 75 dB | |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 23. | **Construction Vibration Standards**<br>(a) Construction vibration shall be measured in accordance with ISO 4866:2010 Mechanical vibration and shock – Vibration of fixed structures – Guidelines for the measurement of vibrations and evaluation of their effects on structures and shall comply with the vibration standards set out in Table 23-1 as far as practicable.<br><br>**Table 23-1 Construction Vibration Standards** |

| Receiver | Details | Category A* | Category B* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Occupied activities sensitive to noise | Night-time 2000h - 0630h | 0.3mm/s ppv | 1mm/s ppv |
| | Daytime 0630h - 2000h | 1mm/s ppv | 5mm/s ppv |
| Other occupied buildings | Daytime 0630h - 2000h | 2mm/s ppv | 5mm/s ppv |
| All other buildings | At all other times Vibration transient | 5mm/s ppv | BS 5228-2** Table B2 |
| | At all other times Vibration continuous | 5mm/s ppv | BS 5228-2** 50% of Table B2 values |

** Refer to NZTA State highway construction and maintenance noise and vibration guide for further explanation regarding Category A and B criteria*

*** BS 5228-2:2009 'Code of practice for noise and vibration control on construction and open sites – Part 2: Vibration'*

(b) Where compliance with the vibration standards set out in Table 23-1 is not practicable, the methodology in Condition 25 shall apply.

(c) If measured or predicted vibration from construction activities exceeds the Category A criteria, a Suitably Qualified Person shall assess and manage construction vibration during those activities.

(d) If measured or predicted vibration from construction activities exceeds the Category B criteria those activities must only proceed if vibration effects on affected buildings are assessed, monitored and mitigated by a Suitably Qualified Person.

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **24.** | **Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP)**<br>(a) A CNVMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for Stage of Work. A CNVMP shall be implemented during the Stage of Work to which it relates. The objective of the CNVMP is to provide a framework for the development and implementation of the Best Practicable Option for the management of construction noise and vibration effects to achieve the construction noise and vibration standards set out in Conditions 22 and 23 to the extent practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CNVMP shall be prepared in accordance with Annex E2 of the New Zealand Standard NZS6803:1999 'Acoustics – Construction Noise' (NZS6803:1999) and shall as a minimum, address the following:<br>(i) description of the works and anticipated equipment/processes;<br>(ii) hours of operation, including times and days when construction activities would occur;<br>(iii) the construction noise and vibration standards for the project;<br>(iv) identification of receivers where noise and vibration standards apply;<br>(v) a hierarchy of management and mitigation options, including any requirements to limit night works and works during other sensitive times, including Sundays and public holidays as far as practicable;<br>(vi) methods and frequency for monitoring and reporting on construction noise and vibration;<br>(vii) procedures for communication and engagement with nearby residents and stakeholders, including notification of proposed construction activities, the period of construction activities, and management of noise and vibration complaints.<br>(viii) contact details of the Project Liaison Person;<br>(ix) procedures for the regular training of the operators of construction equipment to minimise noise and vibration as well as expected construction site behaviours for all workers;<br>(x) procedures and requirements for the preparation of a Schedule to the CNVMP (Schedule) for those areas where compliance with the noise Condition 22 and/or vibration standards Condition 23 Category A or Category B will not be practicable;<br>(xi) identification of trigger levels for undertaking building condition surveys, which shall be below Category B day time levels;<br>(xii) procedures and trigger levels for undertaking building condition surveys before and after works to determine whether any cosmetic or structural damage has occurred as a result of construction vibration;<br>(xiii) methodology and programme of desktop and field audits and inspections to be undertaken to ensure that the CNVMP, Schedules and the best practicable option for management of effects are being implemented; and<br>(xiv) requirements for review and update of the CNVMP. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **25.** | **Schedule to a CNVMP**<br>(a) A Schedule to the CNVMP (Schedule) shall be prepared prior to the start of the construction to which it relates by a Suitably Qualified Person, in consultation with the owners and occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule, when:<br>(i) Construction noise is either predicted or measured to exceed the noise standards in Condition 22<br>(ii) Construction vibration is either predicted or measured to exceed the Category A standard at the receivers in Condition 23.<br>(b) The objective of the Schedule is to set out the Best Practicable Option measures to manage noise and/or vibration effects of the construction activity beyond those measures set out in the CNVMP.<br>(c) To achieve the objective, the Schedule shall include details such as:<br>(i) construction activity location, start and finish times;<br>(ii) the nearest neighbours to the construction activity;<br>(iii) the predicted noise and/or vibration level for all receivers where the levels are predicted or measured to exceed the applicable standards in Conditions 22 and 23 and the predicted duration of the exceedance;<br>(iv) for works proposed between 2000h and 0630h, the reasons why the proposed works must be undertaken during these hours and why they cannot be practicably undertaken during the daytime;<br>(v) the proposed mitigation options that have been selected, and the options that have been discounted as being impracticable and the reasons why;<br>(vi) a summary of the consultation undertaken with owners and occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule, and how consultation has and has not been taken into account; and<br>(vii) location, times and types of monitoring.<br>(d) The Schedule shall be submitted to the Manager for information at least 5 working days (except in unforeseen circumstances) in advance of Construction Works that are covered by the scope of the Schedule and shall form part of the CNVMP. If any comments are received from the Manager, these shall be considered by the Requiring Authority prior to implementation of the Schedule.<br>(e) Where material changes are made to a Schedule required by this condition, the Requiring Authority shall consult the owners and/or occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule prior to submitting the amended Schedule to the Manager for information in accordance with (d) above. The amended Schedule shall document the consultation undertaken with those owners and occupiers, and how consultation outcomes have and have not been taken into account. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 26. | **Historic Heritage Management Plan (HHMP)**<br>(a) A HHMP shall be prepared in consultation with Council, HNZPT and Mana Whenua prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the HHMP is to protect historic heritage and to remedy and mitigate any residual effects as far as practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the HHMP shall identify:<br>(i) any adverse direct and indirect effects on historic heritage sites and measures to appropriately avoid, remedy or mitigate any such effects, including a tabulated summary of these effects and measures;<br>(ii) methods for the identification and assessment of potential historic heritage places within the Designation to inform detailed design;<br>(iii) known historic heritage places and potential archaeological sites within the Designation, including identifying any archaeological sites for which an Archaeological Authority under the HNZPTA will be sought or has been granted;<br>(iv) any unrecorded archaeological sites or post-1900 heritage sites within the Designation, which shall also be documented and recorded;<br>(v) roles, responsibilities and contact details of Project personnel, Council and HNZPT representatives, Mana Whenua representatives, and relevant agencies involved with heritage and archaeological matters including surveys, monitoring of Construction Works, compliance with AUP accidental discovery rule, and monitoring of conditions;<br>(vi) specific areas to be investigated, monitored and recorded to the extent these are directly affected by the Project;<br>(vii) The proposed methodology for investigating and recording post-1900 historic heritage sites (including buildings) that need to be destroyed, demolished or relocated, including details of their condition, measures to mitigate any adverse effects and timeframe for implementing the proposed methodology, in accordance with the HNZPT Archaeological Guidelines Series No.1: Investigation and Recording of Buildings and Standing Structures (November 2018), or any subsequent version;<br>(viii) methods to acknowledge cultural values identified through Condition 13 where archaeological sites also involve ngā taonga tuku iho (treasures handed down by our ancestors) and where feasible and practicable to do so;<br>(ix) methods for avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects on historic heritage places and sites within the Designation during Construction Works as far as practicable. These methods shall include, but are not limited to:<br>A. security fencing or hoardings around historic heritage places to protect them from damage during construction or unauthorised access;<br>B. measures to mitigate adverse effects on historic heritage sites that achieve positive historic heritage outcomes such as increased public awareness and interpretation signage; and<br>C. training requirements and inductions for contractors and subcontractors on historic heritage places within the Designation, legal obligations relating to unexpected discoveries and the AUP Accidental Discovery Rule (E11.6.1). The training shall be undertaken prior to the Start of Construction, under the guidance of a Suitably Qualified Person and Mana Whenua representatives (to the extent the training relates to cultural values identified under Condition 13).<br><br>**Advice note:**<br>**Accidental Discoveries**<br>The requirements for accidental discoveries of heritage items are set out in Rule E11.6.1 of the AUP and in the NZTA Minimum Standard P45 Accidental Archaeological Discovery Specification, or any subsequent version. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 27. | **Pre-Construction Ecological Survey**<br>(a) At the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, an updated ecological survey shall be undertaken by a Suitably Qualified Person. The purpose of the survey is to inform ecological management by:<br>(i) confirming whether the species of value within the Identified Biodiversity Areas recorded in the Identified Biodiversity Area Schedule 2 are still present; and<br>(ii) confirming whether the project will or may have a moderate or greater level of ecological effect on ecological species of value, prior to implementation of impact management measures with the level of effect to be determined in accordance with Table 10 of the EIANZ guidelines as included in Schedule 3 to these conditions (or subsequent updated version of the table).<br>(b) If the ecological survey confirms the presence of ecological species of value in accordance with Condition 27(a)(i) and that effects are likely in accordance with Condition 27(a)(ii) then an Ecological Management Plan (or Plans) shall be prepared in accordance with Condition 28 for these areas (Confirmed Biodiversity Areas). |

**28. Ecological Management Plan (EMP)**

(a) An EMP shall be prepared for any Confirmed Biodiversity Areas (confirmed through Condition 27) prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the EMP is to minimise effects of the Project on the ecological features of value of Confirmed Biodiversity Areas as far as practicable.

(b) To achieve the objective, the EMP shall set out the methods which may include:

(i) If an EMP is required in accordance with Condition 27(b) for the presence of long tail bats:

A. measures to minimise as far as practicable, disturbance from construction activities within the vicinity of any active long tail bat roosts (including maternity) that are discovered through survey until such roosts are confirmed to be vacant of bats;

B. how the timing of any construction work in the vicinity of any maternity long tail bat roosts will be limited to outside the bat maternity period (between December and March) where reasonably practicable;

C. details of areas where vegetation is to be retained where practicable for the purposes of the connectivity of long tail bats;

D. details of how bat connectivity will be provided and maintained (e.g. through the presence of suitable indigenous or exotic trees or artificial alternatives). This could include identification of areas and timeframes for establishment of advance restoration / mitigation planting taking into account land ownership, accessibility and the timing of available funding, measures to manage the effects of light spill on bat connectivity as far as practicable; and

E. where mitigation to minimise effects is not practicable, details of any offsetting proposed.

(ii) If an EMP is required in accordance with Condition 27(b) for the presence of threatened or at risk wetland birds:

A. how the timing of any Construction Works shall be undertaken outside of the bird breeding season (September to February) where practicable.

B. where works are required within the Confirmed Biodiversity Area during the bird season, methods to minimise adverse effects on Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds;

C. undertaking a nesting bird survey of Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds prior to any Construction Works taking place within a 50m radius of any identified Wetlands (including establishment of construction areas adjacent to Wetlands). Surveys should be repeated at the beginning of each wetland bird breeding season and following periods of construction inactivity;

D. what protection and buffer measures will be provided where nesting Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds are identified within 50m of any construction area (including laydown areas). Measures could include:

a. a 20 m buffer area around the nest location and retaining vegetation. The buffer areas should be demarcated where necessary to protect birds from encroachment. This might include the use of marker poles, tape and signage;

b. monitoring of the nesting Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds by a Suitably Qualified Person. Construction works within the 20m nesting buffer areas should not occur until the Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds have fledged from the nest location (approximately 30 days from egg laying to fledging) as confirmed by a Suitably Qualified Person;

c. minimising the disturbance from the works if construction works are required within 50 m of a nest, as advised by a Suitably Qualified Person;

d. adopting a 10m setback where practicable, between the edge of Wetlands and construction areas (along the edge of the stockpile / laydown area); and

e. minimising light spill from construction areas into Wetlands

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| | (c) The EMP shall be consistent with any ecological management measures to be undertaken in compliance with conditions of any regional resource consents granted for the Project.<br>**Advice note:**<br>Depending on the potential effects of the Project, the regional consents for the Project may include the following monitoring and management plans:<br>(i) Stream and/or wetland restoration plans;<br>(ii) Vegetation restoration plans; and<br>(iii) Fauna management plans (eg avifauna, herpetofauna, bats). |
| **29.** | **Tree Management Plan (TMP)**<br>(a) Prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work, a TMP shall be prepared. The objective of the TMP is to avoid, remedy or mitigate effects of construction activities on trees identified as protected or notable in the Auckland Unitary Plan.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the TMP shall:<br>(i) confirm the trees that will be affected by the project work and are identified as protected or notable in the Auckland Unitary Plan; and<br>(ii) demonstrate how the design and location of project works has avoided, remedied or mitigated any effects on any tree identified in 29 (b)(i) above. This may include:<br>A. any opportunities to relocate listed trees where practicable.<br>B. planting to replace trees that require removal (with reference to the ULDMP planting design details in Condition 17);<br>C. tree protection zones and tree protection measures such as protective fencing, ground protection and physical protection of roots, trunks and branches; and<br>D. methods for work within the rootzone of trees that are to be retained in line with accepted arboricultural standards.<br>(iii) demonstrate how the tree management measures (outlined in 29(b)(ii)A – D above) are consistent with conditions of any resource consents granted for the project in relation to managing construction effects on trees. |
| **30.** | **Network Utility Management Plan (NUMP)**<br>(a) A NUMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the NUMP is to set out a framework for protecting, relocating and working in proximity to existing network utilities.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the NUMP shall include methods to:<br>(i) provide access for maintenance at all reasonable times, or emergency works at all times during construction activities;<br>(ii) protect and where necessary, relocate existing network utilities;<br>(iii) manage the effects of dust and any other material potentially resulting from construction activities and able to cause material damage, beyond normal wear and tear to overhead transmission lines in the Project area;<br>(iv) demonstrate compliance with relevant standards and Codes of Practice including, where relevant, the NZECP 34:2001 New Zealand Electrical Code of Practice for Electrical Safe Distances 2001; AS/NZS 4853:2012 Electrical hazards on Metallic Pipelines; and AS/NZS 2885 Pipelines – Gas and Liquid Petroleum.<br>(c) The NUMP shall include methods (including timing) to protect and where required safely relocate the International Cable.<br>(d) The NUMP shall be prepared in consultation with the relevant Network Utility Operator(s) who have existing assets that are directly affected by the Project.<br>(e) Any comments received from the Network Utility Operator shall be considered when finalising the NUMP.<br>(f) Any amendments to the NUMP related to the assets of a Network Utility Operator shall be prepared in consultation with that asset owner. |

## Attachments

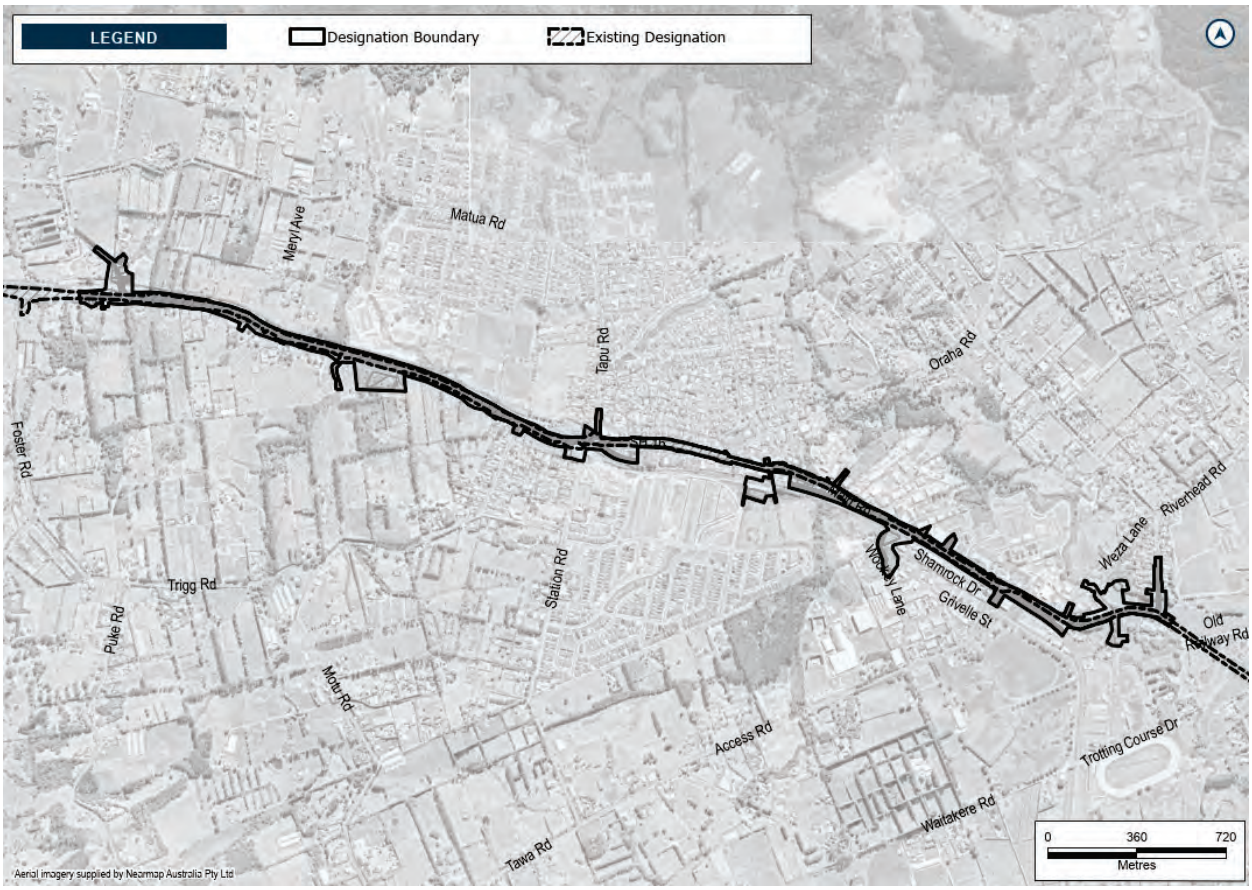
## Schedule 1: General Accordance Plans and Information

### Project Description

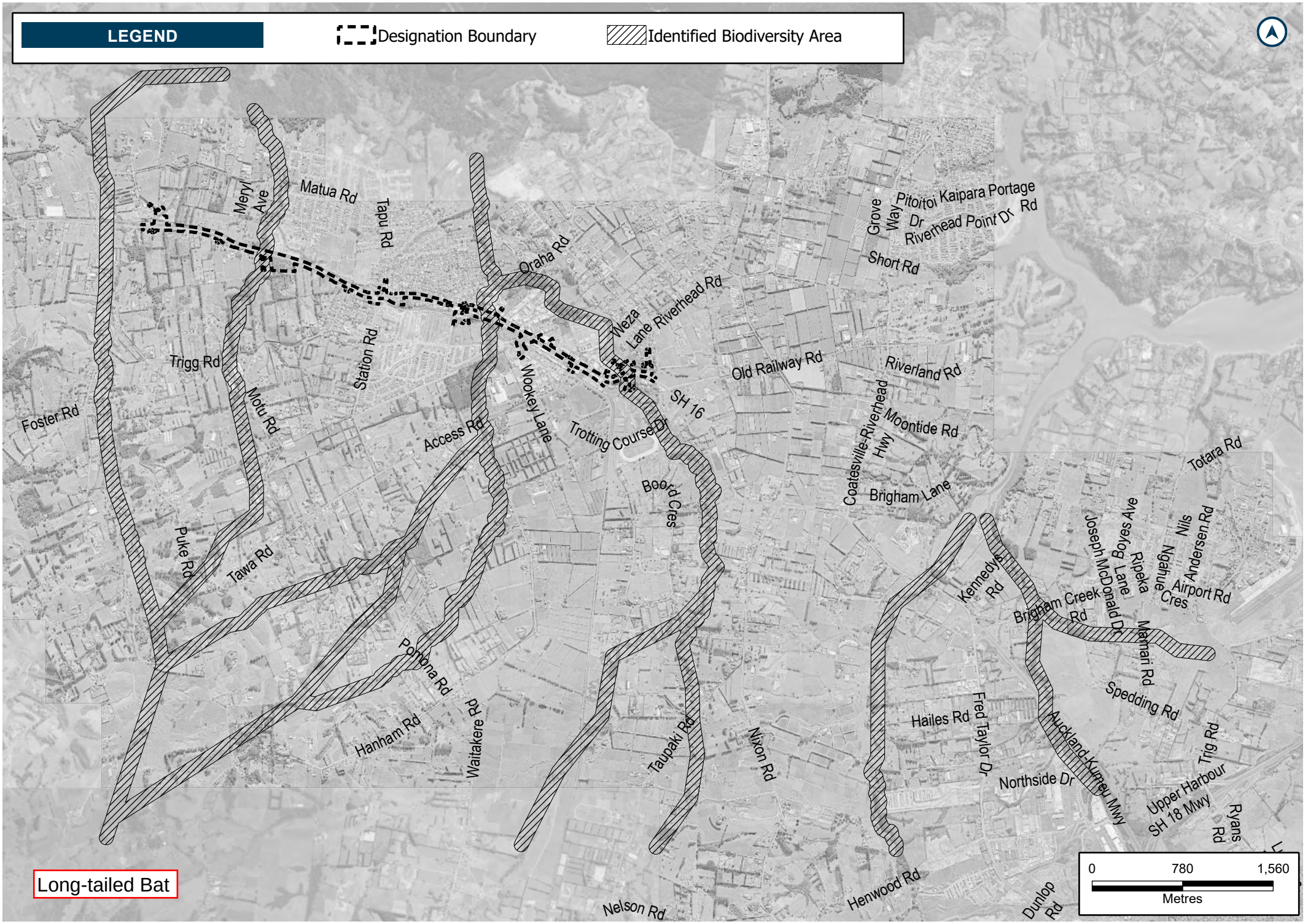
The proposed work is the construction, operation, and maintenance of an upgrade to a state highway in Kumeu-Huapai, from the Matua Road intersection to the intersection with Riverhead Road, including active transport facilities and associated infrastructure. The proposed work is shown in the following Concept Plan and includes:

(a) An upgraded transport corridor and active transport facilities;
(b) Associated works including intersections, bridges, embankments, retaining, culverts, stormwater management systems;
(c) Changes to local roads, where the proposed work intersects with local roads; and
(d) Construction activities, including vegetation removal, construction compounds, laydown areas, bridge works area, construction traffic management and the re-grade of driveways.

### Concept Plan



**Schedule 2: Identified Biodiversity Areas**

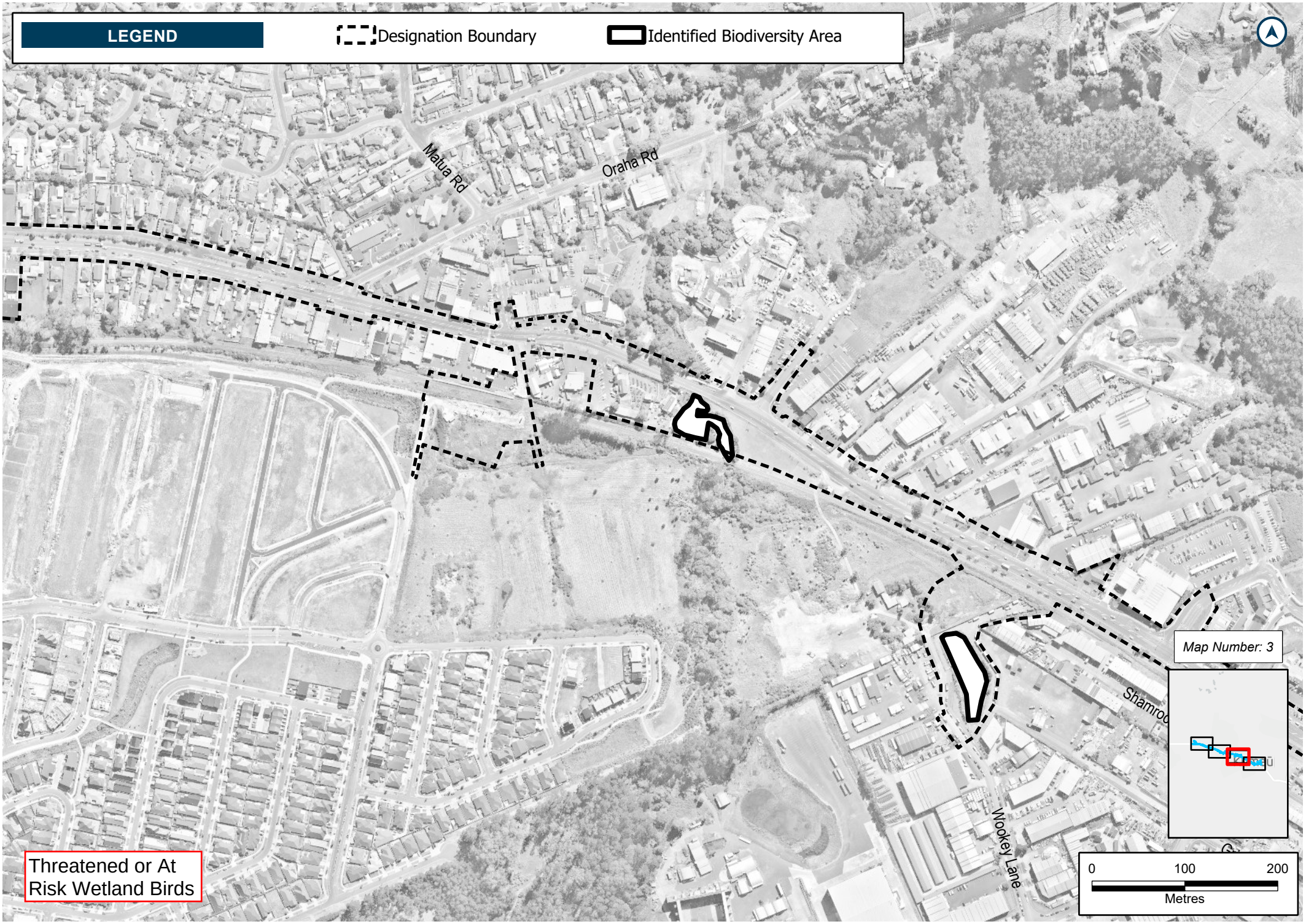

LEGEND
Designation Boundary
Identified Biodiversity Area
Long-tailed Bat
Meryl Ave
Matua Rd
Tapu Rd
Oraha Rd
Weza Lane
Riverhead Rd
Short Rd
Grove Way
Pitoitoi Kaipara Portage Dr
Riverhead Point Dr
Rd
Trigg Rd
Station Rd
Wookey Lane
Old Railway Rd
Riverland Rd
Foster Rd
Motu Rd
Access Rd
SH 16
Trotting Course Dr
Moontide Rd
Coatesville-Riverhead Hwy
Brigham Lane
Boord Cres
Totara Rd
Joseph McDonald Dr
Boyes Ave
Ripeka Lane
Ngahue Cres
Nils Andersen Rd
Airport Rd
Puke Rd
Tawa Rd
Kennedys Rd
Brigham Creek Rd
Marnari Rd
Spedding Rd
Pomona Rd
Hanham Rd
Waitakere Rd
Taupaki Rd
Nixon Rd
Hailes Rd
Fred Taylor Dr
Northside Dr
Auckland-Kumeu Mwy
Trig Rd
Upper Harbour SH 18 Mwy
Ryans Rd
Henwood Rd
Nelson Rd
Dunlop Rd
0
780
1,560
Metres




Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-033-Strategic-SH16-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093\41TGI\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx




Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-033-Strategic-SH16-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093410\GIS\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx




Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-033-Strategic-SH16-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\38109341\GIS\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx


LEGEND
Designation Boundary
Identified Biodiversity Area
Weza Lane
Riverhead Rd
Shamrock Dr
Wookey Lane
Grivelle St
Waitakere Rd
Access Rd
SH 16
Old Railway Rd
Map Number: 4
Threatened or At Risk Wetland Birds
0
100
200
Metres
Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-033-Strategic-SH16-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093\41TGI\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx

**Schedule 3: Table 10 of the 2018 EIANZ Guidelines**

Criteria for describing level of effects (Adapted from Regini (2000) and Boffa Miskell (2011))

| Ecological Value → <br><br> Magnitude ↓ | Very high | High | Moderate | Low | Negligible |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Very high | Very high | Very high | High | Moderate | Low |
| High | Very high | Very high | Moderate | Low | Very low |
| Moderate | High | High | Moderate | Low | Very low |
| Low | Moderate | Low | Low | Very low | Very low |
| Negligible | Low | Very low | Very low | Very low | Very low |
| Positive | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain |

**Appendix C – NZTA Modifications to NoR S3 conditions (clean)**

**[# Council to allocate #] – Rapid Transit Corridor**

| | |
|---|---|
| Designation Number | XXXX |
| Requiring Authority | New Zealand Transport Agency |
| Location | Between Matua Road, Huapai and Brigham Creek Interchange. |
| Lapse Date | In accordance with section 184(1)(c) of the RMA, this designation shall lapse if not given effect to within 20 years from the date on which it is included in the AUP. |

## Purpose

Construction, operation and maintenance of a public transport corridor.

## Conditions

**Abbreviations and definitions**

| Acronym/Term | Definition |
|---|---|
| Activity sensitive to noise | Any dwelling, visitor accommodation, boarding house, marae, papakāinga, integrated residential development, retirement village, supported residential care, care centre, lecture theatre in a tertiary education facility, classroom in an education facility and healthcare facility with an overnight stay facility |
| AUP | Auckland Unitary Plan |
| BPO or Best Practicable Option | Has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA 1991 |
| CEMP | Construction Environmental Management Plan |
| Certification of material changes to management plans | Confirmation from the Manager that a material change to a management plan has been prepared in accordance with the condition to which it relates.<br>A material change to a management plan shall be deemed certified:<br>(a) where the Requiring Authority has received written confirmation from Council that the material change to the management plan is certified; or<br>(b) ten working days from the submission of the material change to the management plan where no written confirmation of certification has been received |
| CMP | Cultural Monitoring Plan |
| CNVMP | Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan |
| CNVMP Schedule or Schedule | A schedule to the CNVMP |
| Completion of Construction | When construction of the Project (or part of the Project) is complete and it is available for use |
| Confirmed Biodiversity Areas | Areas recorded in the Identified Biodiversity Area Schedule where the ecological values and effects have been confirmed through the ecological survey under Condition 28. |
| Construction Works | Activities undertaken to construct the Project excluding Enabling Works |
| Council | Auckland Council |
| CTMP | Construction Traffic Management Plan |
| Educational facility | Facility used for education to secondary level<br>Includes:<br>• schools and outdoor education facilities; and |

| | |
|---|---|
| | • accommodation, administrative, cultural, religious, health, retail and communal facilities accessory to the above<br>Excludes:<br>• care centres; and<br>• tertiary education facilities |
| EIANZ Guidelines | Ecological Impact Assessment: EIANZ guidelines for use in New Zealand: terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems, second edition, dated May 2018 |
| EMP | Ecological Management Plan |
| Enabling works | Includes, but is not limited to, the following and similar activities:<br>(a) geotechnical investigations (including trial embankments);<br>(b) archaeological site investigations;<br>(c) formation of access for geotechnical investigations;<br>(d) establishment of site yards, site entrances and fencing;<br>(e) constructing and sealing site access roads;<br>(f) demolition or removal of buildings and structures;<br>(g) relocation of services; and<br>(h) establishment of mitigation measures (such as erosion and sediment control measures, temporary noise walls, earth bunds and planting) |
| HHMP | Historic Heritage Management Plan |
| HNZPT | Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga |
| HNZPTA | Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 |
| Identified Biodiversity Area | Means an area or areas of features of ecological value where the Project ecologist has identified that the project will potentially have a moderate or greater level of ecological effect, prior to implementation of impact management measures, as determined in accordance with the EIANZ guidelines |
| Manager | The Manager – Resource Consents of the Auckland Council, or authorised delegate |
| Mana Whenua | Mana Whenua as referred to in the conditions are considered to be, but not limited to, the following (in no particular order), who at the time of Notice of Requirement expressed a desire to be involved in the Project:<br>• Te Kawerau ā Maki<br>• Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara<br>• Te Ākitai Waiohua |
| Network Utility Operator | Has the same meaning as set out in section 166 of the RMA |
| NIMP | Network Integration Management Plan |
| NOR | Notice of Requirement |
| North West growth area | Constitutes the Future Urban Zone, or live zoned urban land in Kumeū, Huapai, Redhills, Redhills North, Riverhead and Whenuapai |
| NUMP | Network Utilities Management Plan |
| Outline Plan | An outline plan prepared in accordance with section 176A of the RMA |
| OSMP | Open Space Management Plan |
| Project Liaison Person | The person or persons appointed for the duration of the Project's Construction Works to be the main point of contact for persons wanting information about the Project or affected by the Construction Works |
| Protected Premises and Facilities (PPF) | Protected Premises and Facilities as defined in New Zealand Standard NZS 6806:2010: Acoustics – Road-traffic noise – New and altered roads |
| Requiring Authority | Has the same meaning as section 166 of the RMA and, for this Designation is New Zealand Transport Agency |
| RMA | Resource Management Act 1991 |

| | |
|---|---|
| SCEMP | Stakeholder Communication and Engagement Management Plan |
| Stakeholder | Stakeholders to be identified in accordance with Condition 3, which may include as appropriate:<br>(a) adjacent owners and occupiers;<br>(b) adjacent business owners and operators;<br>(c) central and local government bodies;<br>(d) community groups;<br>(e) developers;<br>(f) development agencies;<br>(g) educational facilities;<br>(h) network utility operators; and<br>(i) emergency services. |
| Stage of Work | Any physical works that require the development of an Outline Plan |
| Start of Construction | The time when Construction Works (excluding Enabling Works) start |
| Suitably Qualified Person | A person (or persons) who can provide sufficient evidence to demonstrate their suitability, experience and competence in the relevant field of expertise |
| TMP | Tree Management Plan |
| ULDMP | Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **General conditions** | |
| **1.** | **Activity in General Accordance with Plans and Information**<br>(a) Except as provided for in the conditions below, and subject to final design and Outline Plan(s), works within the designation shall be undertaken in general accordance with the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1<br>(b) Where there is inconsistency between:<br>(i) the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1 and the requirements of the following conditions, the conditions shall prevail;<br>(ii) the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1, and the management plans under the conditions of the designation, the requirements of the management plans shall prevail. |
| **2.** | **Project Information**<br>(a) A project website, or equivalent virtual information source, shall be established as soon as reasonably practicable, and within six months of the inclusion of this designation in the AUP.<br>(b) All directly affected owners and occupiers shall be notified in writing as soon as reasonably practicable once the website or equivalent information source has been established. The project website or virtual information source shall include these conditions and shall provide information on:<br>(i) the status of the Project;<br>(ii) anticipated construction timeframes;<br>(iii) contact details for enquiries;<br>(iv) the implications of the designation for landowners, occupiers and business owners and operators within the designation on how / where they can receive additional support following confirmation of the designation;<br>(v) a subscription service to enable receipt of project updates by email;<br>(vi) when and how to apply for consent for works in the designation under section 176(1)(b) of the RMA; and<br>(vii) how/where to access noise modelling contours to inform development adjacent to the designation.<br>(c) At the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the project website or virtual information source shall be updated to provide information on the likely date for Start of Construction, and any staging of works. |
| **3.** | **Stakeholder Communication and Engagement**<br>(a) At least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the Requiring Authority shall identify:<br>(i) a list of Stakeholders;<br>(ii) a list of properties within the designation which the Requiring Authority does not own or have occupation rights to; and<br>(iii) methods to engage with Stakeholders and the owners and occupiers of properties identified in 3(a)(i) –(ii) above.<br>(b) A record of (a) shall be submitted with an Outline Plan for the relevant Stage of Work. |
| **4.** | **Designation Review**<br>As soon as reasonably practicable following Completion of Construction, the Requiring Authority shall:<br>(i) review the extent of the designation to identify any areas of designated land that it no longer requires for the on-going operation, maintenance or mitigation of effects of the Project; and<br>(ii) give notice to Auckland Council in accordance with section 182 of the RMA for the removal of those parts of the designation identified above. |
| **5.** | **Lapse**<br>In accordance with section 184(1)(c) of the RMA, this designation shall lapse if not given effect to within 20 years from the date on which it is included in the AUP. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 6. | **Network Utility Operators and Auckland Council (Section 176 Approval)**<br>(a) Prior to the start of Construction Works, Network Utility Operators with existing infrastructure and Auckland Council in relation to parks will not require written consent under section 176 of the RMA for the following activities:<br>(i) operation, maintenance and repair works;<br>(ii) minor renewal works to existing network utilities or parks necessary for the on-going provision or security of supply of network utility operations or parks operations;<br>(iii) minor works such as new service connections; and<br>(iv) the upgrade and replacement of existing network utilities in the same location with the same or similar effects on the work authorised by the designation as the existing utility.<br>(b) To the extent that a record of written approval is required for the activities listed above, this condition shall constitute written approval. |
| **Pre-construction conditions** | |
| 7. | **Outline Plan**<br>(a) An Outline Plan (or Plans) shall be prepared in accordance with section 176A of the RMA.<br>(b) Outline Plans (or Plan) may be submitted in parts or in stages to address particular activities (e.g. design or construction aspects), or a Stage of Work of the Project.<br>(c) Outline Plans shall include any management plan or plans that are relevant to the management of effects of those activities or Stage of Work, which may include:<br>(i) Construction Environmental Management Plan;<br>(ii) Construction Traffic Management Plan;<br>(iii) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan;<br>(iv) Network Integration Management Plan;<br>(v) Open Space Management Plan;<br>(vi) Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan;<br>(vii) Historic Heritage Management Plan;<br>(viii) Ecological Management Plan;<br>(ix) Tree Management Plan; and<br>(x) Network Utilities Management Plan. |
| 8. | **Network Utilities Integration**<br>The Requiring Authority shall consult with Network Utility Operators during the detailed design phase to consider opportunities to enable, or not preclude, the development of new network utility facilities including access to power and ducting within the Project, where practicable to do so. The consultation undertaken, opportunities considered, and whether or not they have been incorporated into the detailed design, shall be summarised in the Outline Plan(s) prepared for the Project. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| | **Flood Hazard**<br>For the purpose of Condition 9:<br>(a) AEP – means Annual Exceedance Probability;<br>(b) Existing authorised habitable floor – means the floor level of any room (floor) in a residential building which is authorised and exists at the time the outline plan is submitted, excluding a laundry, bathroom, toilet or any room used solely as an entrance hall, passageway or garage;<br>(c) Flood prone area – means potential ponding areas that may flood and commonly comprise of topographical depression areas. The areas can occur naturally or as a result of constructed features;<br>(d) Maximum Probable Development – is the design case for consideration of future flows allowing for development within a catchment that takes into account the maximum impervious surface limits of the current zone or if the land is zoned Future Urban in the AUP, the probable level of development arising from zone changes;<br>(e) Pre-Project development – means existing site condition prior to the Project (including existing buildings and roadways); and<br>(f) Post-Project development – means site condition after the Project has been completed (including existing and new buildings and roadways). |
| **9.** | **Flood Hazard**<br>(a) The Project shall be designed to achieve the following flood risk outcomes:<br>(i) no increase in flood levels in a 1% AEP event for existing authorised habitable floors that are already subject to flooding or have a freeboard less than 500mm;<br>(ii) no increase in flood levels in a 1% AEP event for existing authorised community, commercial, industrial and network utility building floors that are already subject to flooding or have a freeboard less than 300mm;<br>(iii) maximum of 50mm increase in water level in a 1% AEP event outside and adjacent to the designation boundaries between the pre and post Project scenarios; and<br>(iv) no increase of Flood Hazard for the main access to authorised habitable dwellings existing at time the Outline Plan is submitted. The assessment shall be undertaken for the 1% AEP rainfall event.<br>(v) Where Flood Hazard is:<br>A. velocity x depth greater than or equal to 0.6; or<br>B. depth greater than 0.5m; or<br>C. velocity greater than 2m/s.<br>(b) Compliance with this condition shall be demonstrated in the Outline Plan, which shall include flood modelling of the pre-Project and post-Project 1% AEP flood levels (for Maximum Probable Development land use with allowances for climate change).<br>(c) Where the above outcomes can be achieved through alternative measures outside of the designation such as flood stop banks, flood walls, raising existing authorised habitable floor level and new overland flow paths or varied through agreement with the relevant landowner, confirmation shall be provided that any necessary landowner and statutory approvals have been obtained for that work or alternative outcome. |
| **10.** | **Existing property access**<br>Prior to submission of the Outline Plan, consultation shall be undertaken with landowners and occupiers whose vehicle access to their property will be altered by the project. The Outline Plan shall demonstrate how safe reconfigured or alternate access will be provided, unless otherwise addressed with the affected landowner. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 11. | **Management Plans**<br>(a) Any management plan shall:<br>(i) be prepared and implemented in accordance with the relevant management plan condition;<br>(ii) be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person(s);<br>(iii) include sufficient detail relating to the management of effects associated with the relevant activities and/or Stage of Work to which it relates;<br>(iv) summarise comments received from Mana Whenua and stakeholders as required by the relevant management plan condition, along with a summary of where comments have:<br>A. been incorporated; and<br>B. where not incorporated, the reasons why.<br>(v) be submitted as part of an Outline Plan pursuant to section 176A of the RMA, with the exception of SCEMPs and CNVMP Schedules;<br>(vi) once finalised, uploaded to the Project website or equivalent virtual information source.<br>(b) Any management plan developed in accordance with Condition 11 may:<br>(i) be submitted in parts or in stages to address particular activities (e.g. design or construction aspects), a Stage of Work of the Project, or to address specific activities authorised by the designation;<br>(ii) except for material changes, be amended to reflect any changes in design, construction methods or management of effects without further process;<br>(c) If there is a material change required to a management plan which has been submitted with an Outline Plan, the revised part of the plan shall be submitted to the Council as an update to the Outline Plan or for Certification as soon as practicable following identification of the need for a revision;<br>(d) Any material changes to the SCEMP(s) are to be submitted to the Council for information. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 12. | **Stakeholder Communication and Engagement Management Plan (SCEMP)**<br>(a) A SCEMP shall be prepared in consultation with Stakeholders prior to the Start of Construction. The objective of the SCEMP is to identify how the public and Stakeholders will be engaged with throughout Construction Works.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the SCEMP shall include:<br>(i) a list of Stakeholders;<br>(ii) a list of properties within the designation which the Requiring Authority does not own or have occupation rights to;<br>(iii) methods to engage with Stakeholders and the owners of properties identified in 12(b)(ii) above;<br>(iv) the contact details for the Project Liaison Person. These details shall be on the Project website, or equivalent virtual information source, and prominently displayed at the main entrance(s) to the site(s);<br>(v) methods for engaging with Mana Whenua, to be developed in consultation with Mana Whenua;<br>(vi) Methods to manage the potential loss of visibility from public spaces, and severance to businesses in the Business - Town Centre Zones, informed by engagement undertaken in accordance with condition 12(b)(i) and (ii). These methods could include (but not be limited to) customer access arrangements, temporary wayfinding and signage;<br>(vii) methods and timing to engage with owners and occupiers whose access is directly affected;<br>(viii) methods to communicate key project milestones and the proposed hours of construction activities including outside of normal working hours and on weekends and public holidays, to the parties identified in 12(b)(i) and (ii) above; and<br>(ix) linkages and cross-references to communication and engagement methods set out in other conditions and management plans where relevant.<br>(c) Any SCEMP prepared for a Stage of Work shall be submitted to Council for information a minimum of ten working days prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. |
| 13. | **Network Integration Management Plan (NIMP)**<br>(a) At least six (6) months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the Requiring Authority shall prepare, in collaboration with other relevant road controlling authorities, a Network Integration Management Plan (NIMP).<br>(b) The objective of the NIMP is to identify how the Project will integrate with the planned transport network in the North West growth area to achieve an effective, efficient and safe land transport system. To achieve this objective, the NIMP shall include details of the:<br>(i) Project implementation approach and any staging of the Project, including design, management and operational matters; and<br>(ii) Sequencing of the Project with the planned transport network, including design, management and operational matters. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 14. | **Cultural Advisory Report**<br>(a) At least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, Mana Whenua shall be invited to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report for the Project. The objective of the Cultural Advisory Report is to assist in understanding and identifying Ngā Taonga Tuku Iho ('treasures handed down by our ancestors') affected by the Project, to inform their management and protection.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the Requiring Authority shall invite Mana Whenua to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report that:<br>(i) identifies the cultural sites, landscapes and values that have the potential to be affected by the construction and operation of the Project;<br>(ii) sets out the desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values;<br>(iii) identifies traditional cultural practices within the area that may be impacted by the Project;<br>(iv) identifies opportunities for restoration and enhancement of identified cultural sites, landscapes and values within the Project area;<br>(v) taking into account the outcomes of 14(b)(i) to (iv) above, identify cultural matters and principles that should be considered in the development of the ULDMP and HHMP, and the CMP referred to in Condition 21;<br>(vi) identifies and (if possible) nominates traditional names along the Project alignment. Noting there may be formal statutory processes outside the Project required in any decision-making.<br>(c) The desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values identified in the Cultural Advisory Report shall be discussed with Mana Whenua and those outcomes reflected in the relevant management plans where practicable;<br>(d) Conditions 14(b) and (c) will cease to apply if:<br>(i) Mana Whenua have been invited to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report by a date at least six months prior to start of Construction Works; and<br>(ii) Mana Whenua have not provided a Cultural Advisory Report within six months prior to start of Construction Works. |
| 15. | **Open Space Management Plan (OSMP)**<br>(a) An OSMP shall be prepared for Huapai Recreation Reserve and Fred Taylor Park ('the parks') prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work that will impact on the parks.<br>(b) Auckland Council Parks shall be invited to participate in the development of the OSMP at least eighteen (18) months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work that will impact on the parks.<br>(c) The objective of the OSMP is to minimise, as far as practicable, adverse effects on the recreation amenity of the parks resulting from the Project. To achieve the objective, the OSMP shall include details of:<br>(i) how ongoing access (including walking and cycling) to parks during construction will be maintained in accordance with the Construction Traffic Management Plan (Condition 22);<br>(ii) opportunities to coordinate the forward work programme for the parks, where appropriate, with Auckland Council Parks;<br>(iii) measures to reasonably maintain the existing service level of the affected park, including any temporary or permanent reconfiguration or replacement of park facilities; and<br>(iv) how matters raised by Auckland Council Parks and relevant stakeholders have been incorporated into the OSMP, and where matters have not been incorporated, the reasons why not. |
| | **Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan (ULDMP)** |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **16.** | (a) A ULDMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the ULDMP(s) is to:<br>(i) enable integration of the Project's permanent works into the surrounding landscape and urban context; and<br>(ii) ensure that the Project manages potential adverse landscape and visual effects as far as practicable and contributes to a quality urban environment.<br>(b) Mana Whenua shall be invited to participate in the development of the ULDMP(s) to provide input into relevant cultural landscape and design matters including how desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values identified and discussed in accordance with Condition 14 may be reflected in the ULDMP.<br>(c) Relevant stakeholders shall be invited to participate in the development of the ULDMP at least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work |
| **17.** | (a) To achieve the objective set out in Condition 16, the ULDMP(s) shall provide details of how the project:<br>(i) is designed to integrate with the adjacent urban (or proposed urban) and landscape context, including the surrounding existing or proposed topography, urban environment (i.e. centres and density of built form), natural environment, landscape character and open space zones (including Huapai Recreation Reserve and Fred Taylor Park);<br>(ii) provides appropriate walking and cycling connectivity to, and interfaces with, existing or proposed adjacent land uses, public transport infrastructure and walking and cycling connections;<br>(iii) promotes inclusive access (where appropriate);<br>(iv) promotes a sense of personal safety by aligning with best practice guidelines, such as:<br>A. Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED) principles;<br>B. Safety in Design (SID) requirements; and<br>C. Maintenance in Design (MID) requirements and anti-vandalism/anti-graffiti measures; and<br>(v) Interfaces with the operational areas of commercial premises within business zoned land, including loading areas, internal circulation and car parking, where practicable.<br>(b) The ULDMP shall be prepared in general accordance with:<br>(i) Waka Kotahi Urban Design Guidelines: Bridging the Gap (2013) or any subsequent updated version;<br>(ii) NZTA Landscape Guidelines (2018) or any subsequent updated version; and<br>(iii) Waka Kotahi P39 Standard Specification for Highway Landscape Treatments (2013) or any subsequent updated version. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **18.** | The ULDMP(s) shall include:<br>(a) a concept plan – which depicts the overall landscape and urban design concept, and explain the rationale for the landscape and urban design proposals;<br>(b) developed design concepts, including principles for walking and cycling facilities and public transport; and<br>(c) landscape and urban design details – that cover the following:<br>(i) road design – elements such as intersection form, carriageway gradient and associated earthworks contouring including cut and fill batters, shaped to a natural profile where practicable and appropriate to the surrounding context, and the interface with adjacent land uses and existing roads (including slip lanes), benching, spoil disposal sites, median width and treatment, roadside width and treatment;<br>(ii) roadside elements – such as lighting, fencing, wayfinding and signage;<br>(iii) architectural and landscape treatment of all major structures, including bridges and retaining walls;<br>(iv) architectural and landscape treatment of noise barriers;<br>(v) landscape treatment and planting of permanent stormwater control wetlands and swales;<br>(vi) integration of passenger transport;<br>(vii) pedestrian and cycle facilities including paths, road crossings and dedicated pedestrian/ cycle bridges or underpasses;<br>(viii) historic heritage places including Huapai Tavern (AUP:OP Schedule 14.1 #00482) and Kumeū Railway Goods Shed (AUP:OP Schedule 14.1 #00483), with reference to the HHMP (Condition 27);<br>(ix) re-instatement of construction and site compound areas; and<br>(x) re-instatement of features to be retained such as:<br>A. boundary features;<br>B. landscaping;<br>C. driveways;<br>D. accessways; and<br>E. fences.<br>(d) The ULDMP shall also include the following planting details and maintenance requirements:<br>(i) planting design details including:<br>A. identification of existing trees and vegetation that will be retained with reference to the TMP and Ecological Management Plan. Where practicable, mature trees and native vegetation should be retained;<br>B. street trees, shrubs and ground cover suitable for the location;<br>C. treatment of fill slopes to integrate with adjacent land use, streams, Riparian margins and open space zones;<br>D. identification of any planting requirements under the Ecological Management Plan (Conditions 29) and TMP (Condition 30); and<br>E. integration of any planting requirements required by conditions of any resource consents for the project;<br>(ii) a planting programme including the staging of planting in relation to the construction programme which shall, as far as practicable, include provision for planting within each planting season following completion of works in each Stage of Work; and<br>(iii) detailed specifications relating to the following:<br>A. weed control and clearance;<br>B. pest animal management (to support plant establishment);<br>C. ground preparation (top soiling and decompaction);<br>D. mulching; and<br>E. plant sourcing and planting, including hydroseeding and grassing, and use of eco-sourced species |
| **Specific Outline Plan requirements** | |
| **Construction conditions** | |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 19. | **Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP)**<br>(a) A CEMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the CEMP is to set out the management procedures and construction methods to be undertaken to, avoid, remedy or mitigate any adverse effects associated with Construction Works as far as practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CEMP shall include:<br>(i) the roles and responsibilities of staff and contractors;<br>(ii) details of the site or project manager and the Project Liaison Person, including their contact details (phone and email address);<br>(iii) the Construction Works programmes and the staging approach, and the proposed hours of work;<br>(iv) details of the proposed construction yards including temporary screening when adjacent to residential zones;<br>(v) details of the proposed construction lighting;<br>(vi) methods for controlling dust and the removal of debris and demolition of construction materials from public roads or places;<br>(vii) methods for providing for the health and safety of the general public;<br>(viii) measures to mitigate flood hazard effects such as siting stockpiles out of floodplains, minimising obstruction to flood flows, actions to respond to warnings of heavy rain;<br>(ix) procedures for incident management;<br>(x) location and procedures for the refuelling and maintenance of plant and equipment to avoid discharges of fuels or lubricants to watercourses;<br>(xi) measures to address the storage of fuels, lubricants, hazardous and/or dangerous materials, along with contingency procedures to address emergency spill response(s) and clean up;<br>(xii) summary of measures included to respond to matters raised in engagement, if not already covered above;<br>(xiii) procedures for responding to complaints about Construction Works; and<br>(xiv) methods for amending and updating the CEMP as required. |
| 20. | **Complaints Register**<br>(a) At all times during Construction Works, a record of any complaints received about the Construction Works shall be maintained. The record shall include:<br>(i) the date, time and nature of the complaint;<br>(ii) the name, phone number and address of the complainant (unless the complainant wishes to remain anonymous);<br>(iii) measures taken to respond to the complaint (including a record of the response provided to the complainant) or confirmation of no action if deemed appropriate;<br>(iv) the outcome of the investigation into the complaint; and<br>(v) any other activities in the area, unrelated to the Project that may have contributed to the complaint, such as non-project construction, fires, traffic accidents or unusually dusty conditions generally.<br>(b) A copy of the Complaints Register required by this condition shall be made available to the Manager upon request as soon as practicable after the request is made. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 21. | **Cultural Monitoring Plan (CMP)**<br>(a) Prior to the start of Construction Works, a CMP shall be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person(s) identified in collaboration with Mana Whenua. The objective of the CMP is to identify methods for undertaking cultural monitoring to assist with management of any cultural effects during Construction works.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CMP shall include:<br>(i) Requirements for formal dedication or cultural interpretation to be undertaken prior to start of Construction Works in areas identified as having significance to Mana Whenua;<br>(ii) Requirements and protocols for cultural inductions for contractors and subcontractors;<br>(iii) Identification of activities, sites and areas where cultural monitoring is required during particular Construction Works;<br>(iv) Identification of personnel to undertake cultural monitoring, including any geographic definition of their responsibilities; and<br>(v) Details of personnel to assist with management of any cultural effects identified during cultural monitoring, including implementation of the Accidental Discovery Protocol<br>(c) If Enabling Works involving soil disturbance are undertaken prior to the start of Construction Works, an Enabling Works CMP shall be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person identified in collaboration with Mana Whenua. This plan may be prepared as a standalone Enabling Works CMP or be included in the main Construction Works CMP.<br><br>**Advice note:**<br>Where appropriate, the CMP shall align with the requirements of other conditions of the designation and resource consents for the Project which require monitoring during Construction Works. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 22. | **Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP)**<br>(a) A CTMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the CTMP is to avoid, remedy or mitigate, as far as practicable, adverse construction traffic effects.<br>(b) To achieve this objective, the CTMP shall include:<br>(i) methods to manage the effects of temporary traffic management activities on traffic;<br>(ii) measures to ensure the safety of all transport users;<br>(iii) the estimated numbers, frequencies, routes and timing of traffic movements, including any specific non-working or non-movement hours to manage vehicular and pedestrian traffic near educational facilities or to manage traffic congestion;<br>(iv) site access routes and access points for heavy vehicles, the size and location of parking areas for plant, construction vehicles and the vehicles of workers and visitors;<br>(v) identification of detour routes and other methods to ensure the safe management and maintenance of traffic flows, including public transport services, pedestrians and cyclists;<br>(vi) methods to maintain access to and within property and/or private roads where practicable, or to provide alternative arrangements when it will not be, including details of how access is managed for loading and unloading of goods. Engagement with landowners or occupiers whose access is directly affected shall be undertaken in accordance with the SCEMP;<br>(vii) the management approach to loads on heavy vehicles, including covering loads of fine material, the use of wheel-wash facilities at site exit points and the timely removal of any material deposited or spilled on public roads;<br>(viii) methods that will be undertaken to communicate traffic management measures to affected road users (e.g. residents / public / stakeholders / emergency services);<br>(ix) details of minimum network performance parameters during the construction phase, including any measures to monitor compliance with the performance parameters; and<br>(x) details of any measures proposed to be implemented in the event of thresholds identified in 22(b)(ix) being exceeded.<br>(c) Auditing, monitoring and reporting requirements relating to traffic management activities shall be undertaken in accordance with the New Zealand Guide to Temporary Traffic Management (April 2023) or any subsequent version. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 23. | **Construction Noise Standards**<br>(a) Construction noise shall be measured and assessed in accordance with NZS6803:1999 Acoustics – Construction Noise and shall comply with the noise standards set out in the following table as far as practicable:<br><br>**Table 23-1 Construction Noise Standards** |

| Day of week | Time period | $L_{Aeq(15min)}$ | $L_{AFmax}$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Occupied activity sensitive to noise** | | | |
| Weekday | 0630h - 0730h | 55 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 70 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 65 dB | 80 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| Saturday | 0630h - 0730h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 70 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| Sunday and Public Holidays | 0630h - 0730h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 55 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| **Other occupied buildings** | | | |
| All | 0730h – 1800h | 70 dB | |
| | 1800h – 0730h | 75 dB | |

(b) Where compliance with the noise standards set out in Table 23-1 is not practicable, the methodology in Condition 26 shall apply.

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 24. | **Construction Vibration Standards**<br>(a) Construction vibration shall be measured in accordance with ISO 4866:2010 Mechanical vibration and shock – Vibration of fixed structures – Guidelines for the measurement of vibrations and evaluation of their effects on structures and shall comply with the vibration standards set out in Table 24-1 as far as practicable. |

**Table 24-1 Construction Vibration Standards**

| Receiver | Details | Category A* | Category B* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Occupied activities sensitive to noise | Night-time 2000h - 0630h | 0.3mm/s ppv | 1mm/s ppv |
| | Daytime 0630h - 2000h | 1mm/s ppv | 5mm/s ppv |
| Other occupied buildings | Daytime 0630h - 2000h | 2mm/s ppv | 5mm/s ppv |
| All other buildings | At all other times Vibration transient | 5mm/s ppv | BS 5228-2** Table B2 |
| | At all other times Vibration continuous | 5mm/s ppv | BS 5228-2** 50% of Table B2 values |

** Refer to NZTA State highway construction and maintenance noise and vibration guide for further explanation regarding Category A and B criteria*

*** BS 5228-2:2009 'Code of practice for noise and vibration control on construction and open sites – Part 2: Vibration'*

(b) Where compliance with the vibration standards set out in Table 24-1 is not practicable, the methodology in Condition 26 shall apply.

(c) If measured or predicted vibration from construction activities exceeds the Category A criteria, a Suitably Qualified Person shall assess and manage construction vibration during those activities.

(d) If measured or predicted vibration from construction activities exceeds the Category B criteria those activities must only proceed if vibration effects on affected buildings are assessed, monitored and mitigated by a Suitably Qualified Person.

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 25. | **Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP)**<br>(a) A CNVMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for Stage of Work. A CNVMP shall be implemented during the Stage of Work to which it relates. The objective of the CNVMP is to provide a framework for the development and implementation of the Best Practicable Option for the management of construction noise and vibration effects to achieve the construction noise and vibration standards set out in Conditions 23 and 24 to the extent practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CNVMP shall be prepared in accordance with Annex E2 of the New Zealand Standard NZS6803:1999 'Acoustics – Construction Noise' (NZS6803:1999) and shall as a minimum, address the following:<br>(i) description of the works and anticipated equipment/processes;<br>(ii) hours of operation, including times and days when construction activities would occur;<br>(iii) the construction noise and vibration standards for the project;<br>(iv) identification of receivers where noise and vibration standards apply;<br>(v) a hierarchy of management and mitigation options, including any requirements to limit night works and works during other sensitive times, including Sundays and public holidays as far as practicable;<br>(vi) methods and frequency for monitoring and reporting on construction noise and vibration;<br>(vii) procedures for communication and engagement with nearby residents and stakeholders, including notification of proposed construction activities, the period of construction activities, and management of noise and vibration complaints.<br>(viii) contact details of the Project Liaison Person;<br>(ix) procedures for the regular training of the operators of construction equipment to minimise noise and vibration as well as expected construction site behaviours for all workers;<br>(x) procedures and requirements for the preparation of a Schedule to the CNVMP (Schedule) for those areas where compliance with the noise Condition 23 and/or vibration standards Condition 24 Category A or Category B will not be practicable;<br>(xi) identification of trigger levels for undertaking building condition surveys, which shall be below Category B day time levels;<br>(xii) procedures and trigger levels for undertaking building condition surveys before and after works to determine whether any cosmetic or structural damage has occurred as a result of construction vibration;<br>(xiii) methodology and programme of desktop and field audits and inspections to be undertaken to ensure that the CNVMP, Schedules and the best practicable option for management of effects are being implemented; and<br>(xiv) requirements for review and update of the CNVMP. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **26.** | **Schedule to a CNVMP**<br>(a) A Schedule to the CNVMP (Schedule) shall be prepared prior to the start of the construction to which it relates by a Suitably Qualified Person, in consultation with the owners and occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule, when:<br>(i) Construction noise is either predicted or measured to exceed the noise standards in Condition 23<br>(ii) Construction vibration is either predicted or measured to exceed the Category A standard at the receivers in Condition 24.<br>(b) The objective of the Schedule is to set out the Best Practicable Option measures to manage noise and/or vibration effects of the construction activity beyond those measures set out in the CNVMP.<br>(c) To achieve the objective, the Schedule shall include details such as:<br>(i) construction activity location, start and finish times;<br>(ii) the nearest neighbours to the construction activity;<br>(iii) the predicted noise and/or vibration level for all receivers where the levels are predicted or measured to exceed the applicable standards in Conditions 23 and 24 and the predicted duration of the exceedance;<br>(iv) for works proposed between 2000h and 0630h, the reasons why the proposed works must be undertaken during these hours and why they cannot be practicably undertaken during the daytime;<br>(v) the proposed mitigation options that have been selected, and the options that have been discounted as being impracticable and the reasons why;<br>(vi) a summary of the consultation undertaken with owners and occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule, and how consultation has and has not been taken into account; and<br>(vii) location, times and types of monitoring.<br>(d) The Schedule shall be submitted to the Manager for information at least 5 working days (except in unforeseen circumstances) in advance of Construction Works that are covered by the scope of the Schedule and shall form part of the CNVMP. If any comments are received from the Manager, these shall be considered by the Requiring Authority prior to implementation of the Schedule.<br>(e) Where material changes are made to a Schedule required by this condition, the Requiring Authority shall consult the owners and/or occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule prior to submitting the amended Schedule to the Manager for information in accordance with (d) above. The amended Schedule shall document the consultation undertaken with those owners and occupiers, and how consultation outcomes have and have not been taken into account. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **27.** | **Historic Heritage Management Plan (HHMP)**<br>(a) A HHMP shall be prepared in consultation with Council, HNZPT and Mana Whenua prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the HHMP is to protect historic heritage and to remedy and mitigate any residual effects as far as practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the HHMP shall identify:<br>(i) any adverse direct and indirect effects on historic heritage sites and measures to appropriately avoid, remedy or mitigate any such effects, including a tabulated summary of these effects and measures;<br>(ii) methods for the identification and assessment of potential historic heritage places within the Designation to inform detailed design;<br>(iii) known historic heritage places and potential archaeological sites within the Designation, including identifying any archaeological sites for which an Archaeological Authority under the HNZPTA will be sought or has been granted;<br>(iv) any unrecorded archaeological sites or post-1900 heritage sites within the Designation, which shall also be documented and recorded;<br>(v) roles, responsibilities and contact details of Project personnel, Council and HNZPT representatives, Mana Whenua representatives, and relevant agencies involved with heritage and archaeological matters including surveys, monitoring of Construction Works, compliance with AUP accidental discovery rule, and monitoring of conditions;<br>(vi) specific areas to be investigated, monitored and recorded to the extent these are directly affected by the Project;<br>(vii) The proposed methodology for investigating and recording post-1900 historic heritage sites (including buildings) that need to be destroyed, demolished or relocated, including details of their condition, measures to mitigate any adverse effects and timeframe for implementing the proposed methodology, in accordance with the HNZPT Archaeological Guidelines Series No.1: Investigation and Recording of Buildings and Standing Structures (November 2018), or any subsequent version;<br>(viii) methods to acknowledge cultural values identified through Condition 14 where archaeological sites also involve ngā taonga tuku iho (treasures handed down by our ancestors) and where feasible and practicable to do so;<br>(ix) methods for avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects on historic heritage places and sites within the Designation during Construction Works as far as practicable. These methods shall include, but are not limited to:<br>A. security fencing or hoardings around historic heritage places to protect them from damage during construction or unauthorised access;<br>B. measures to mitigate adverse effects on historic heritage sites that achieve positive historic heritage outcomes such as increased public awareness and interpretation signage; and<br>C. training requirements and inductions for contractors and subcontractors on historic heritage places within the Designation, legal obligations relating to unexpected discoveries and the AUP Accidental Discovery Rule (E11.6.1). The training shall be undertaken prior to the Start of Construction, under the guidance of a Suitably Qualified Person and Mana Whenua representatives (to the extent the training relates to cultural values identified under Condition 14).<br>(x) For Huapai Tavern (AUP:OP Schedule 14.1 #00482) and Kumeū Railway Goods Shed (AUP:OP Schedule 14.1 #00483) measures and methods shall be identified to:<br>A. appropriately avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse construction effects from the re-location of the buildings;<br>B. appropriately re-locate the Huapai Tavern (AUP:OP Schedule 14.1 #00482) within the area identified in Schedule 4 in a manner that respects the heritage value of the buildings;<br>C. appropriately re-locate the Kumeū Railway Goods Shed (AUP:OP Schedule 14.1 #00483) within extent of the designation located within Kumeū-Huapai in a manner that respects the heritage value of the building; |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| | D. identify non-original additions to the Huapai Tavern which may be removed without compromising the heritage values of the building; and<br>E. identify long term protection management of heritage elements of the buildings<br><br>**Advice note:**<br>**Accidental Discoveries**<br>The requirements for accidental discoveries of heritage items are set out in Rule E11.6.1 of the AUP and in the NZTA Minimum Standard P45 Accidental Archaeological Discovery Specification, or any subsequent version.<br><br>The Kumeū Railway Goods Shed and Huapai Tavern are scheduled under the AUP(OP). Long term protection management will be identified though Condition 27(b)(x) E until the extent of place is amended through a Plan Change process to reflect the new location once relocated. |
| **28.** | **Pre-Construction Ecological Survey**<br>(a) At the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, an updated ecological survey shall be undertaken by a Suitably Qualified Person. The purpose of the survey is to inform ecological management by:<br>(i) confirming whether the species of value within the Identified Biodiversity Areas recorded in the Identified Biodiversity Area Schedule 2 are still present; and<br>(ii) confirming whether the project will or may have a moderate or greater level of ecological effect on ecological species of value, prior to implementation of impact management measures with the level of effect to be determined in accordance with Table 10 of the EIANZ guidelines as included in Schedule 3 to these conditions (or subsequent updated version of the table).<br>(b) If the ecological survey confirms the presence of ecological species of value in accordance with Condition 28(a)(i) and that effects are likely in accordance with Condition 28(a)(ii) then an Ecological Management Plan (or Plans) shall be prepared in accordance with Condition 29 for these areas (Confirmed Biodiversity Areas). |

**29. Ecological Management Plan (EMP)**

(a) An EMP shall be prepared for any Confirmed Biodiversity Areas (confirmed through Condition 28) prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the EMP is to minimise effects of the Project on the ecological features of value of Confirmed Biodiversity Areas as far as practicable.

(b) To achieve the objective, the EMP shall set out the methods which may include:

(i) If an EMP is required in accordance with Condition 28(b) for the presence of long tail bats:

A. measures to minimise as far as practicable, disturbance from construction activities within the vicinity of any active long tail bat roosts (including maternity) that are discovered through survey until such roosts are confirmed to be vacant of bats;

B. how the timing of any construction work in the vicinity of any maternity long tail bat roosts will be limited to outside the bat maternity period (between December and March) where reasonably practicable;

C. details of areas where vegetation is to be retained where practicable for the purposes of the connectivity of long tail bats;

D. details of how bat connectivity will be provided and maintained (e.g. through the presence of suitable indigenous or exotic trees or artificial alternatives). This could include identification of areas and timeframes for establishment of advance restoration / mitigation planting taking into account land ownership, accessibility and the timing of available funding, measures to manage the effects of light spill on bat connectivity as far as practicable; and

E. where mitigation to minimise effects is not practicable, details of any offsetting proposed.

(ii) If an EMP is required in accordance with Condition 28(b) for the presence of threatened or at risk wetland birds:

A. how the timing of any Construction Works shall be undertaken outside of the bird breeding season (September to February) where practicable;

B. where works are required within the Confirmed Biodiversity Area during the bird season, methods to minimise adverse effects on Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds;

C. undertaking a nesting bird survey of Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds prior to any Construction Works taking place within a 50m radius of any identified Wetlands (including establishment of construction areas adjacent to Wetlands). Surveys should be repeated at the beginning of each wetland bird breeding season and following periods of construction inactivity;

D. what protection and buffer measures will be provided where nesting Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds are identified within 50m of any construction area (including laydown areas). Measures could include:

a. a 20 m buffer area around the nest location and retaining vegetation. The buffer areas should be demarcated where necessary to protect birds from encroachment. This might include the use of marker poles, tape and signage;

b. monitoring of the nesting Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds by a Suitably Qualified Person. Construction works within the 20m nesting buffer areas should not occur until the Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds have fledged from the nest location (approximately 30 days from egg laying to fledging) as confirmed by a Suitably Qualified Person;

c. minimising the disturbance from the works if construction works are required within 50 m of a nest, as advised by a Suitably Qualified Person;

d. adopting a 10m setback where practicable, between the edge of Wetlands and construction areas (along the edge of the stockpile / laydown area); and

e. minimising light spill from construction areas into Wetlands

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| | (c) The EMP shall be consistent with any ecological management measures to be undertaken in compliance with conditions of any regional resource consents granted for the Project.<br>**Advice note:**<br>Depending on the potential effects of the Project, the regional consents for the Project may include the following monitoring and management plans:<br>(i) Stream and/or wetland restoration plans;<br>(ii) Vegetation restoration plans; and<br>(iii) Fauna management plans (eg avifauna, herpetofauna, bats). |
| **30.** | **Tree Management Plan (TMP)**<br>(a) Prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work, a TMP shall be prepared. The objective of the TMP is to avoid, remedy or mitigate effects of construction activities on trees identified as protected or notable in the Auckland Unitary Plan.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the TMP shall:<br>(i) confirm the trees that will be affected by the project work and are identified as protected or notable in the Auckland Unitary Plan; and<br>(ii) demonstrate how the design and location of project works has avoided, remedied or mitigated any effects on any tree identified in 30 (b)(i) above. This may include:<br>A. any opportunities to relocate listed trees where practicable.<br>B. planting to replace trees that require removal (with reference to the ULDMP planting design details in Condition 18);<br>C. tree protection zones and tree protection measures such as protective fencing, ground protection and physical protection of roots, trunks and branches; and<br>D. methods for work within the rootzone of trees that are to be retained in line with accepted arboricultural standards.<br>(iii) demonstrate how the tree management measures (outlined in 30(b)(ii)A – D above) are consistent with conditions of any resource consents granted for the project in relation to managing construction effects on trees. |
| **31.** | **Network Utility Management Plan (NUMP)**<br>(a) A NUMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the NUMP is to set out a framework for protecting, relocating and working in proximity to existing network utilities.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the NUMP shall include methods to:<br>(i) provide access for maintenance at all reasonable times, or emergency works at all times during construction activities;<br>(ii) protect and where necessary, relocate existing network utilities;<br>(iii) manage the effects of dust and any other material potentially resulting from construction activities and able to cause material damage, beyond normal wear and tear to overhead transmission lines in the Project area;<br>(iv) demonstrate compliance with relevant standards and Codes of Practice including, where relevant, the NZECP 34:2001 New Zealand Electrical Code of Practice for Electrical Safe Distances 2001; AS/NZS 4853:2012 Electrical hazards on Metallic Pipelines; and AS/NZS 2885 Pipelines – Gas and Liquid Petroleum.<br>(c) The NUMP shall include methods (including timing) to protect and where required safely relocate the International Cable.<br>(d) The NUMP shall be prepared in consultation with the relevant Network Utility Operator(s) who have existing assets that are directly affected by the Project.<br>(e) Any comments received from the Network Utility Operator shall be considered when finalising the NUMP.<br>(f) Any amendments to the NUMP related to the assets of a Network Utility Operator shall be prepared in consultation with that asset owner. |
| | **Operational conditions** |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **32.** | **Low Noise Road Surface**<br>(a) Asphaltic mix surface shall be implemented within 12 months of Completion of Construction of the Project.<br>(b) The asphaltic mix surface shall be maintained to retain the noise reduction performance as far as practicable. |

## Attachments

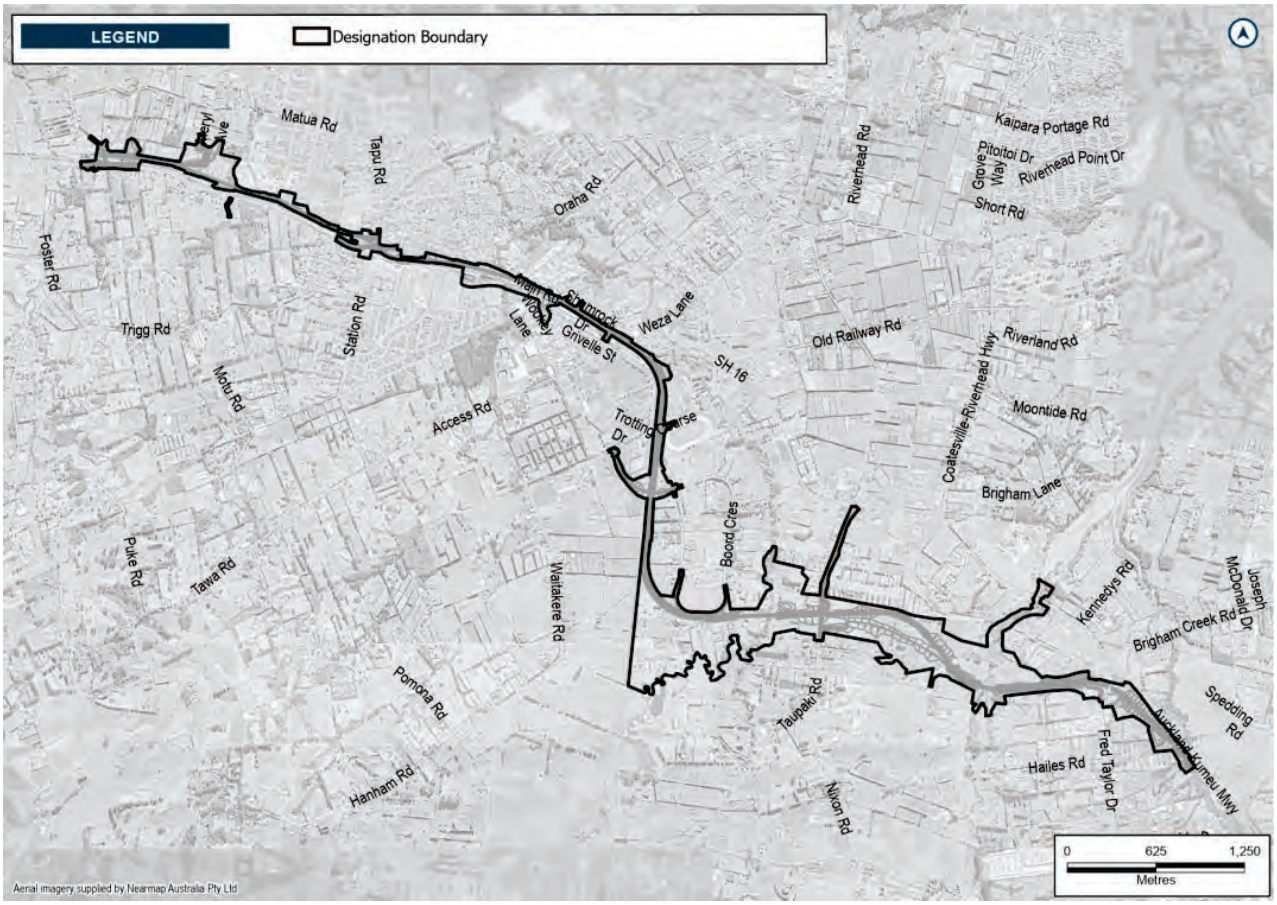
## Schedule 1: General Accordance Plans and Information

### Project Description

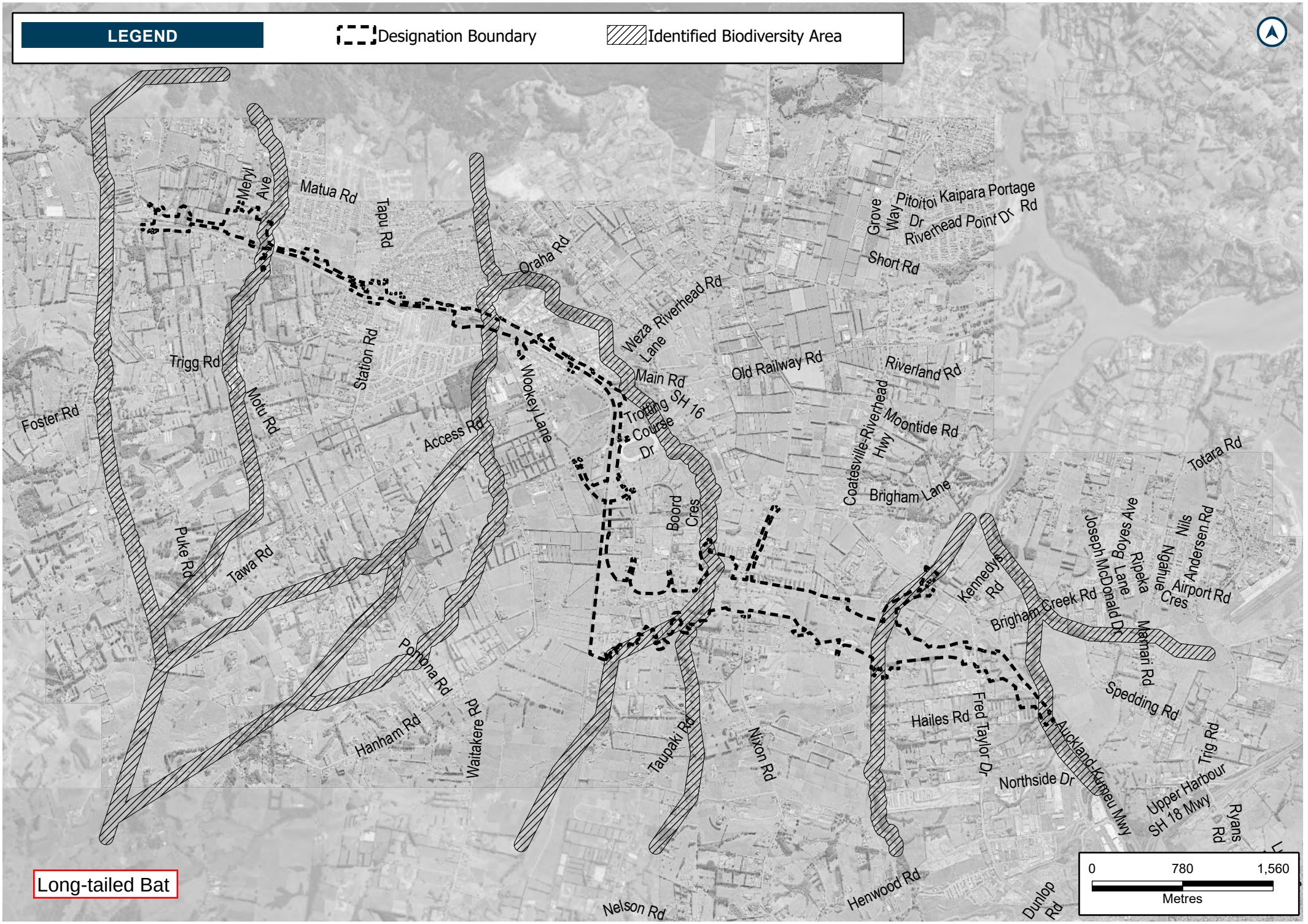
The proposed work is the construction, operation, and maintenance of a rapid transit corridor in North West Auckland, from Matua Road to Brigham Creek Interchange, including active transport facilities and associated infrastructure. The proposed work is shown in the following Concept Plan and includes:

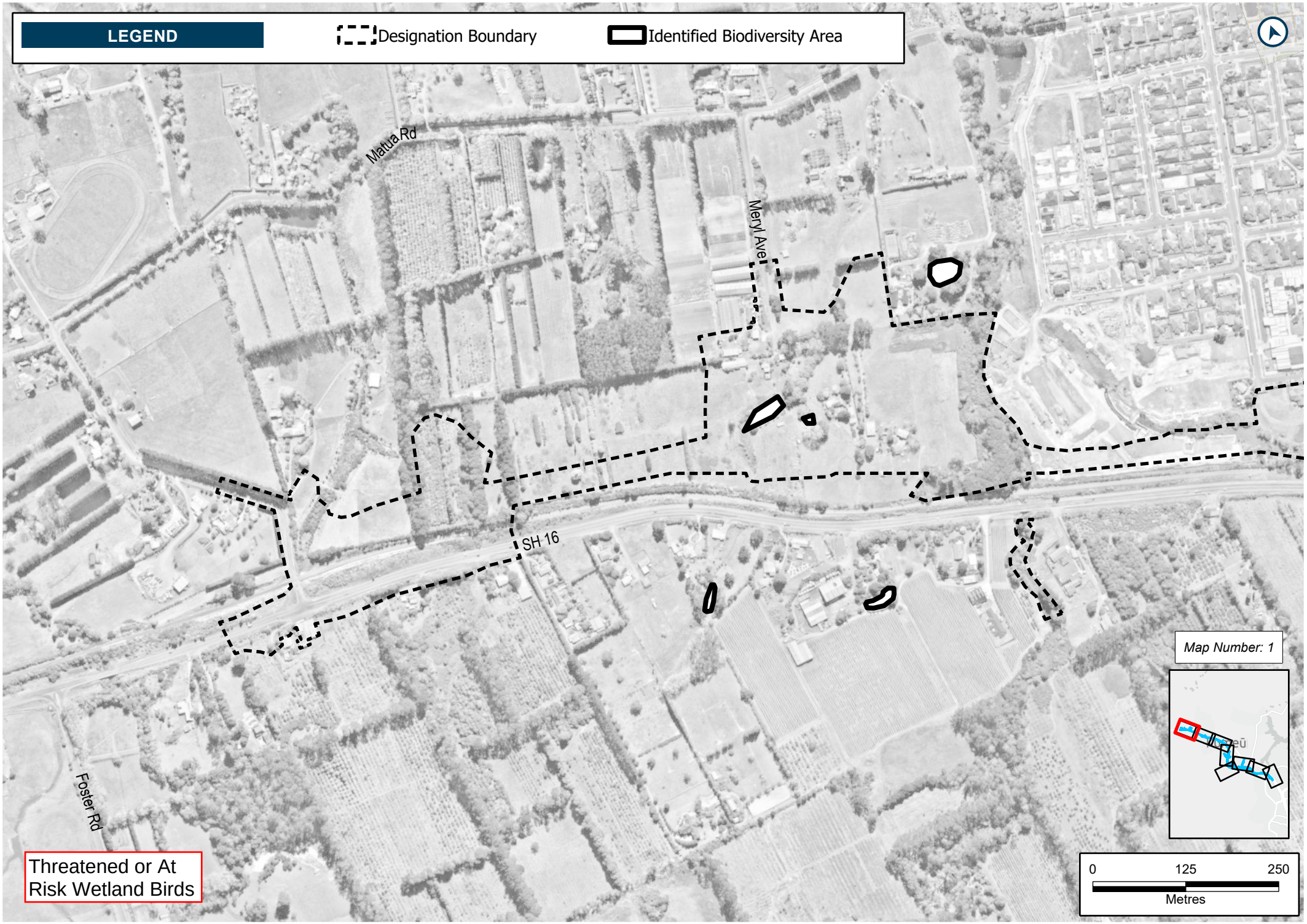
(a) A new transport corridor and active transport facilities;
(b) Associated works including intersections, bridges, embankments, retaining, culverts, stormwater management systems; and
(c) Construction activities, including vegetation removal, construction compounds, laydown areas, bridge works area, construction traffic management and the re-grade of driveways.

### Concept Plan



**Schedule 2: Identified Biodiversity Areas**

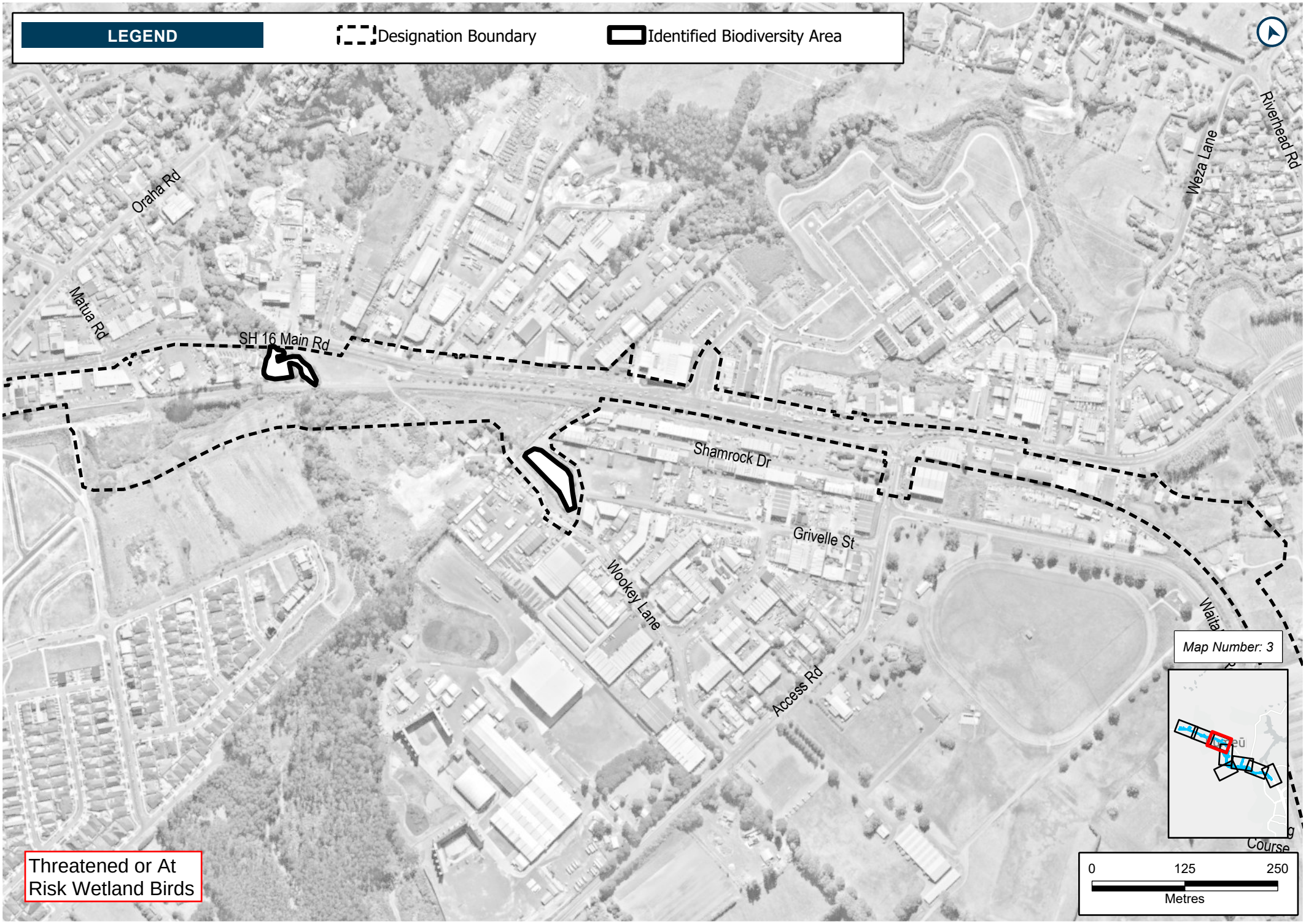

LEGEND
Designation Boundary
Identified Biodiversity Area
Meryl Ave
Matua Rd
Tapu Rd
Oraha Rd
Weza Lane
Riverhead Rd
Short Rd
Grove Way
Pitoitoi Dr
Kaipara Portage Rd
Riverhead Point Dr
Trigg Rd
Station Rd
Motu Rd
Foster Rd
Wookey Lane
Main Rd
SH 16
Trotting Course Dr
Access Rd
Old Railway Rd
Riverland Rd
Moontide Rd
Coatesville-Riverhead Hwy
Brigham Lane
Totara Rd
Boord Cres
Puke Rd
Tawa Rd
Pomona Rd
Hanham Rd
Waitakere Rd
Taupaki Rd
Nixon Rd
Kennedys Rd
Joseph McDonald Dr
Boyes Ave
Ripeka Lane
Ngahue Cres
Nils Andersen Rd
Airport Rd
Brigham Creek Rd
Marnari Rd
Spedding Rd
Hailes Rd
Fred Taylor Dr
Auckland-Kumeu Mwy
Northside Dr
Upper Harbour SH 18 Mwy
Trig Rd
Ryans Rd
Henwood Rd
Nelson Rd
Dunlop Rd
Long-tailed Bat
0
780
1,560
Metres

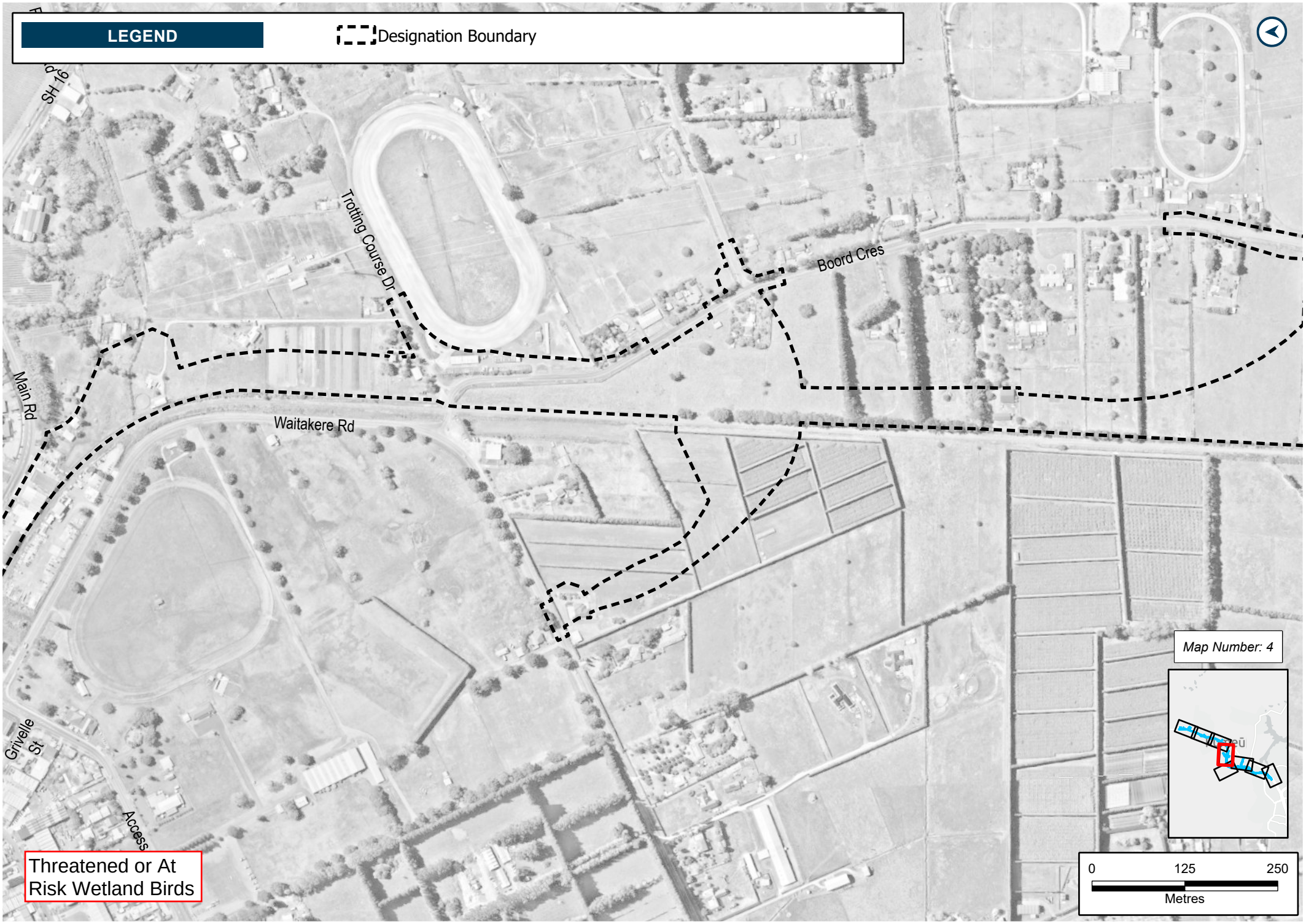



Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-034-Strategic-RTN-Bird-Mitigation

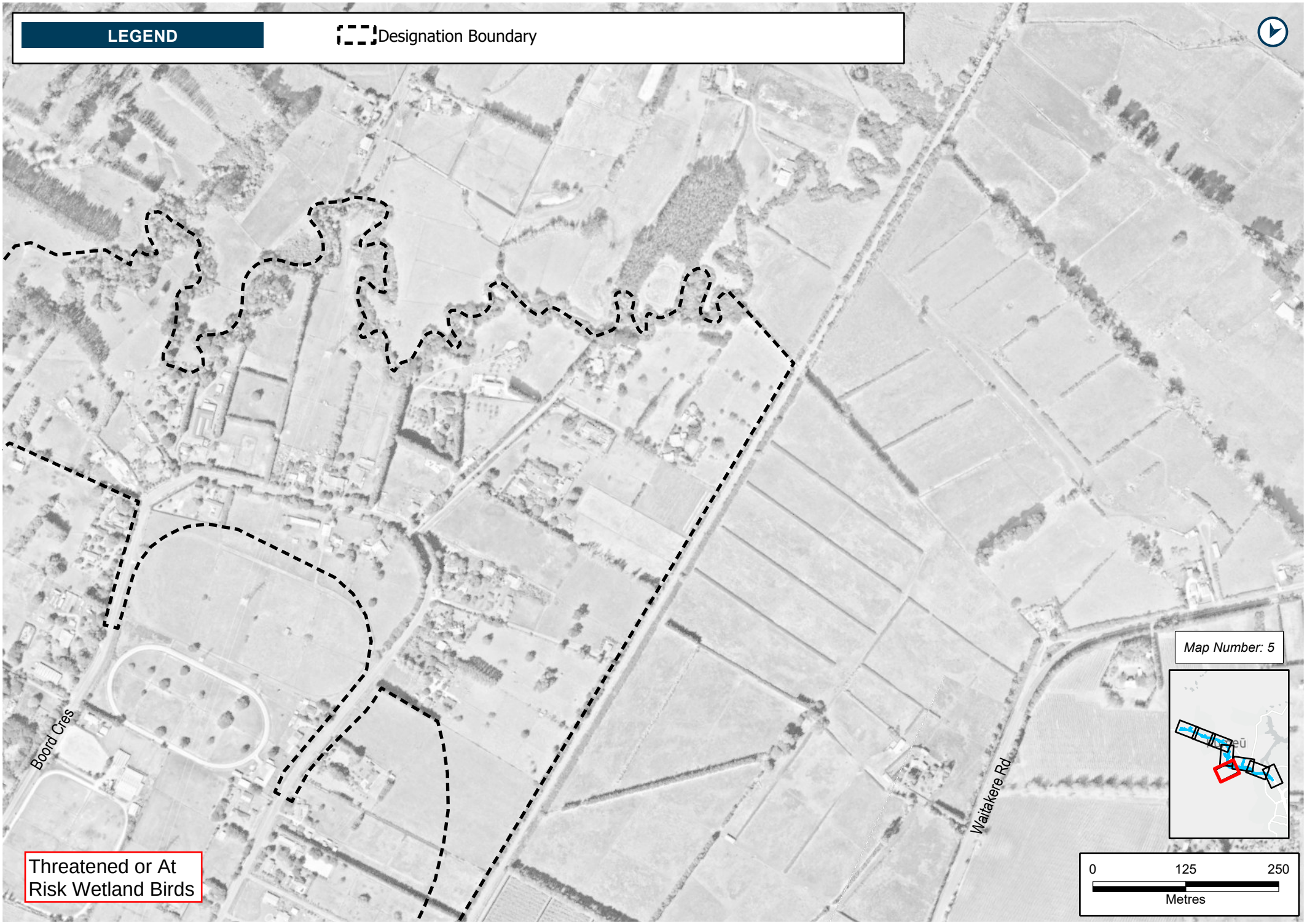
Path: P:\381\381093411\GIS\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx


LEGEND
Designation Boundary
Identified Biodiversity Area
Matua Rd
Tapu Rd
Oraha Rd
Main Rd
SH 16
Trigg Rd
Station Rd
Map Number: 2
Threatened or At Risk Wetland Birds
0
125
250
Metres
Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-034-Strategic-RTN-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093\41TGI\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx

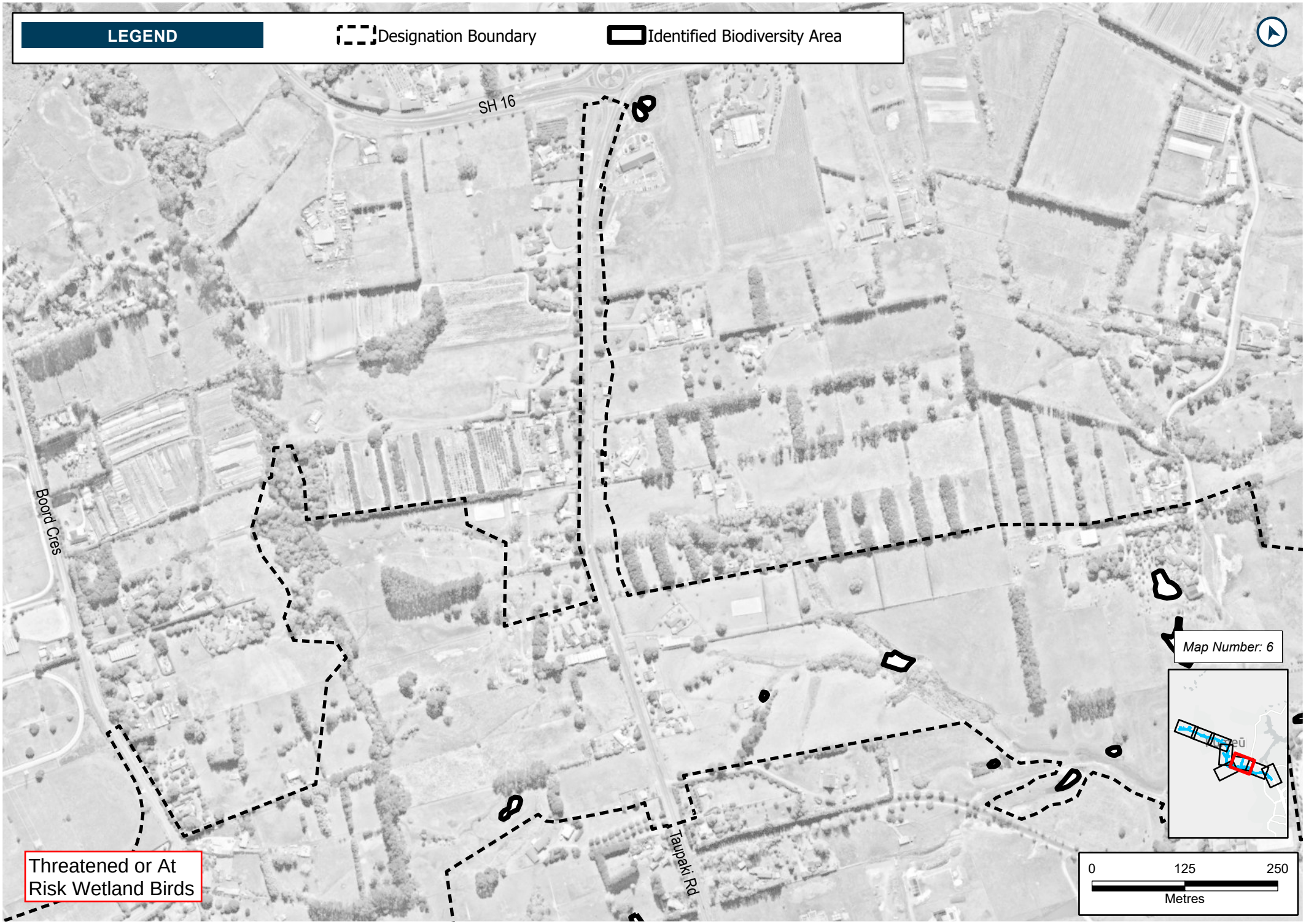

LEGEND
Designation Boundary
Identified Biodiversity Area
Oraha Rd
Matua Rd
SH 16 Main Rd
Shamrock Dr
Grivelle St
Wookey Lane
Access Rd
Weza Lane
Riverhead Rd
Course
Map Number: 3
Threatened or At Risk Wetland Birds
0
125
250
Metres
Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-034-Strategic-RTN-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093\41TGI\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx



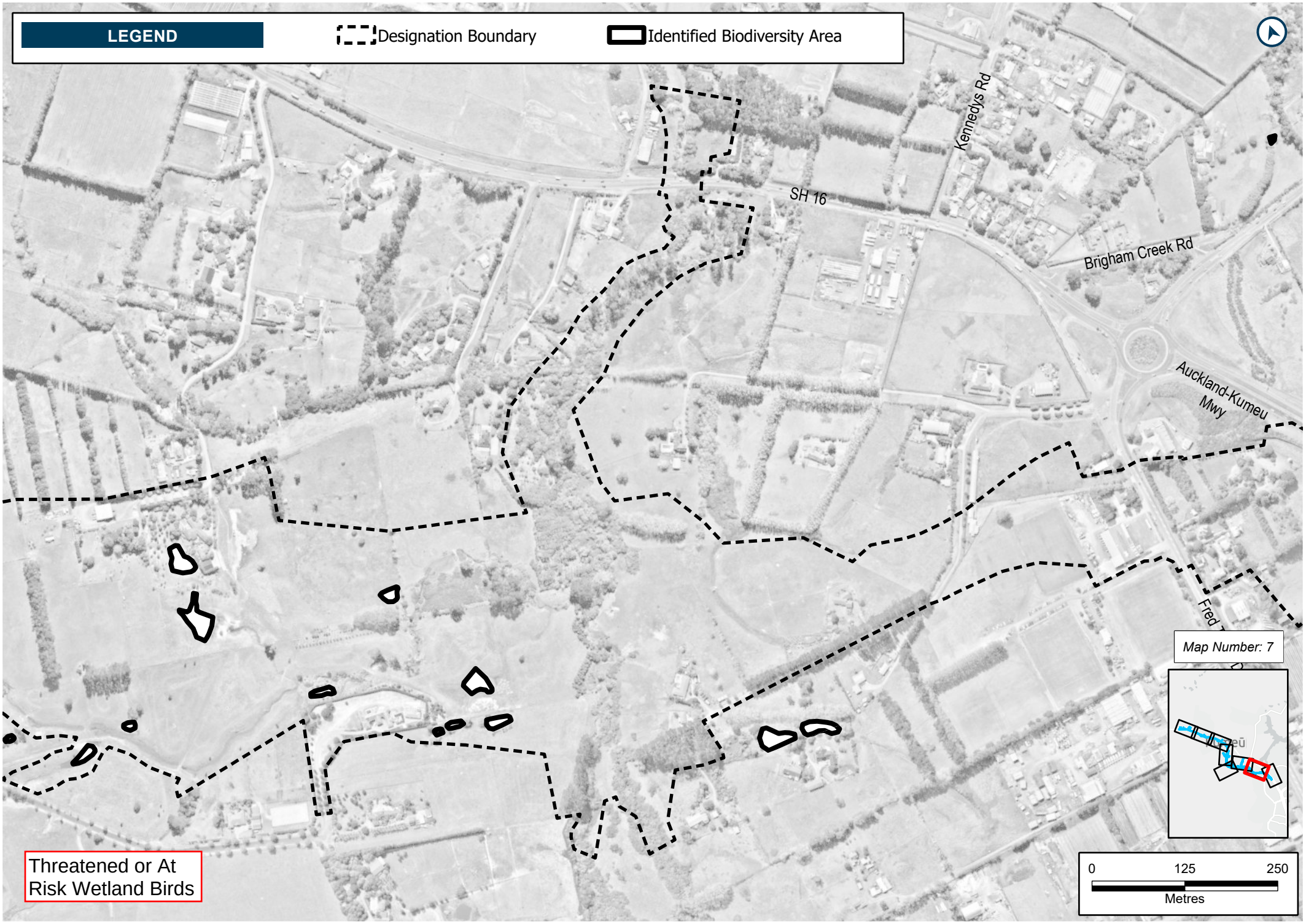

Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-034-Strategic-RTN-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093410\GIS\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx



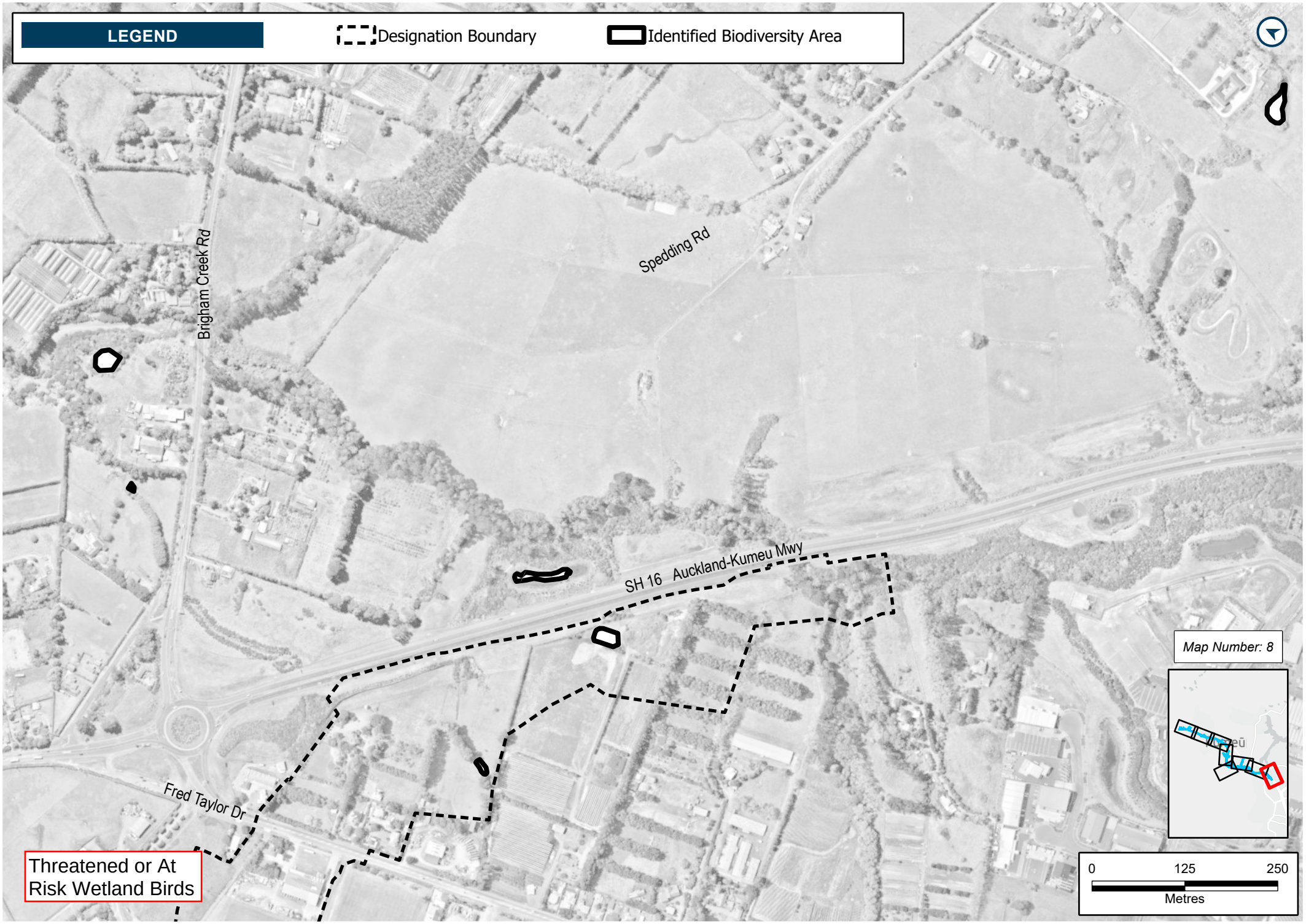

Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-034-Strategic-RTN-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093\41TGI\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx




Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-034-Strategic-RTN-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093411\GIS\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx




Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-034-Strategic-RTN-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093\41\GIS\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx



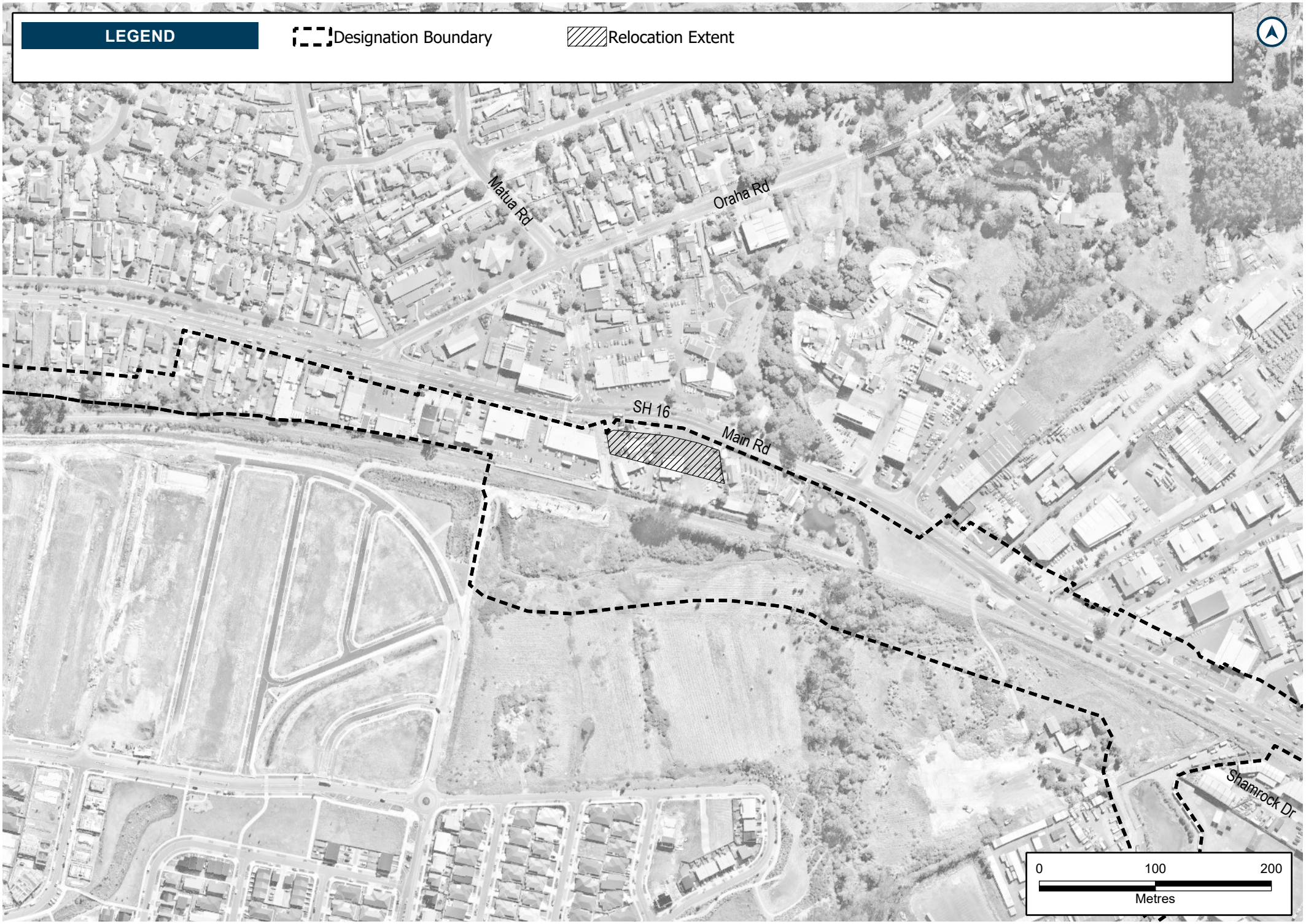

Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-034-Strategic-RTN-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093\41TGI\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx

**Schedule 3: Table 10 of the 2018 EIANZ Guidelines**

Criteria for describing level of effects (Adapted from Regini (2000) and Boffa Miskell (2011))

| Ecological Value → <br><br> Magnitude ↓ | Very high | High | Moderate | Low | Negligible |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Very high | Very high | Very high | High | Moderate | Low |
| High | Very high | Very high | Moderate | Low | Very low |
| Moderate | High | High | Moderate | Low | Very low |
| Low | Moderate | Low | Low | Very low | Very low |
| Negligible | Low | Very low | Very low | Very low | Very low |
| Positive | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain |

**Schedule 4: Huapai Tavern Relocation**


LEGEND
Designation Boundary
Relocation Extent
Matua Rd
Oraha Rd
SH 16
Main Rd
Shamrock Dr
0
100
200
Metres

**Appendix D – NZTA Modifications to NoR KS conditions (clean)**

## [# Council to allocate #] – Kumeū Station

| | |
|---|---|
| Designation Number | XXXX |
| Requiring Authority | New Zealand Transport Agency |
| Location | Main Road, Kumeū. |
| Lapse Date | In accordance with section 184(1)(c) of the RMA, this designation shall lapse if not given effect to within 20 years from the date on which it is included in the AUP. |

# Purpose

Construction, operation and maintenance of a public transport station and associated facilities.

# Conditions

**Abbreviations and definitions**

| Acronym/Term | Definition |
|---|---|
| Activity sensitive to noise | Any dwelling, visitor accommodation, boarding house, marae, papakāinga, integrated residential development, retirement village, supported residential care, care centre, lecture theatre in a tertiary education facility, classroom in an education facility and healthcare facility with an overnight stay facility |
| AUP | Auckland Unitary Plan |
| BPO or Best Practicable Option | Has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA 1991 |
| CEMP | Construction Environmental Management Plan |
| Certification of material changes to management plans | Confirmation from the Manager that a material change to a management plan has been prepared in accordance with the condition to which it relates.<br>A material change to a management plan shall be deemed certified:<br>(a) where the Requiring Authority has received written confirmation from Council that the material change to the management plan is certified; or<br>(b) ten working days from the submission of the material change to the management plan where no written confirmation of certification has been received |
| CMP | Cultural Monitoring Plan |
| CNVMP | Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan |
| CNVMP Schedule or Schedule | A schedule to the CNVMP |
| Completion of Construction | When construction of the Project (or part of the Project) is complete and it is available for use |
| Confirmed Biodiversity Areas | Areas recorded in the Identified Biodiversity Area Schedule where the ecological values and effects have been confirmed through the ecological survey under Condition 27. |
| Construction Works | Activities undertaken to construct the Project excluding Enabling Works |
| Council | Auckland Council |
| CTMP | Construction Traffic Management Plan |
| Educational facility | Facility used for education to secondary level<br>Includes:<br>• schools and outdoor education facilities; and |

| | |
|---|---|
| | • accommodation, administrative, cultural, religious, health, retail and communal facilities accessory to the above<br>Excludes:<br>• care centres; and<br>• tertiary education facilities |
| EIANZ Guidelines | Ecological Impact Assessment: EIANZ guidelines for use in New Zealand: terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems, second edition, dated May 2018 |
| EMP | Ecological Management Plan |
| Enabling works | Includes, but is not limited to, the following and similar activities:<br>(a) geotechnical investigations (including trial embankments);<br>(b) archaeological site investigations;<br>(c) formation of access for geotechnical investigations;<br>(d) establishment of site yards, site entrances and fencing;<br>(e) constructing and sealing site access roads;<br>(f) demolition or removal of buildings and structures;<br>(g) relocation of services; and<br>(h) establishment of mitigation measures (such as erosion and sediment control measures, temporary noise walls, earth bunds and planting) |
| HHMP | Historic Heritage Management Plan |
| HNZPT | Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga |
| HNZPTA | Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 |
| Identified Biodiversity Area | Means an area or areas of features of ecological value where the Project ecologist has identified that the project will potentially have a moderate or greater level of ecological effect, prior to implementation of impact management measures, as determined in accordance with the EIANZ guidelines |
| Manager | The Manager – Resource Consents of the Auckland Council, or authorised delegate |
| Mana Whenua | Mana Whenua as referred to in the conditions are considered to be, but not limited to, the following (in no particular order), who at the time of Notice of Requirement expressed a desire to be involved in the Project:<br>• Te Kawerau ā Maki<br>• Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara<br>• Te Ākitai Waiohua |
| Network Utility Operator | Has the same meaning as set out in section 166 of the RMA |
| NIMP | Network Integration Management Plan |
| NOR | Notice of Requirement |
| North West growth area | Constitutes the Future Urban Zone, or live zoned urban land in Kumeū, Huapai, Redhills, Redhills North, Riverhead and Whenuapai |
| NUMP | Network Utilities Management Plan |
| Outline Plan | An outline plan prepared in accordance with section 176A of the RMA |
| Project Liaison Person | The person or persons appointed for the duration of the Project's Construction Works to be the main point of contact for persons wanting information about the Project or affected by the Construction Works |
| Protected Premises and Facilities (PPF) | Protected Premises and Facilities as defined in New Zealand Standard NZS 6806:2010: Acoustics – Road-traffic noise – New and altered roads |
| Requiring Authority | Has the same meaning as section 166 of the RMA and, for this Designation is New Zealand Transport Agency |
| RMA | Resource Management Act 1991 |
| SCEMP | Stakeholder Communication and Engagement Management Plan |

| | |
|---|---|
| Stakeholder | Stakeholders to be identified in accordance with Condition 3, which may include as appropriate:<br>(a) adjacent owners and occupiers;<br>(b) adjacent business owners and operators;<br>(c) central and local government bodies;<br>(d) community groups;<br>(e) developers;<br>(f) development agencies;<br>(g) educational facilities; and<br>(h) network utility operators |
| Stage of Work | Any physical works that require the development of an Outline Plan |
| Start of Construction | The time when Construction Works (excluding Enabling Works) start |
| Suitably Qualified Person | A person (or persons) who can provide sufficient evidence to demonstrate their suitability, experience and competence in the relevant field of expertise |
| TMP | Tree Management Plan |
| ULDMP | Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **General conditions** | |
| **1.** | **Activity in General Accordance with Plans and Information**<br>(a) Except as provided for in the conditions below, and subject to final design and Outline Plan(s), works within the designation shall be undertaken in general accordance with the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1<br>(b) Where there is inconsistency between:<br>(i) the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1 and the requirements of the following conditions, the conditions shall prevail;<br>(ii) the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1, and the management plans under the conditions of the designation, the requirements of the management plans shall prevail. |
| **2.** | **Project Information**<br>(a) A project website, or equivalent virtual information source, shall be established as soon as reasonably practicable, and within six months of the inclusion of this designation in the AUP.<br>(b) All directly affected owners and occupiers shall be notified in writing as soon as reasonably practicable once the website or equivalent information source has been established. The project website or virtual information source shall include these conditions and shall provide information on:<br>(i) the status of the Project;<br>(ii) anticipated construction timeframes;<br>(iii) contact details for enquiries;<br>(iv) the implications of the designation for landowners, occupiers and business owners and operators within the designation on how / where they can receive additional support following confirmation of the designation;<br>(v) a subscription service to enable receipt of project updates by email;<br>(vi) when and how to apply for consent for works in the designation under section 176(1)(b) of the RMA; and<br>(vii) how/where to access noise modelling contours to inform development adjacent to the designation.<br>(c) At the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the project website or virtual information source shall be updated to provide information on the likely date for Start of Construction, and any staging of works. |
| **3.** | **Stakeholder Communication and Engagement**<br>(a) At least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the Requiring Authority shall identify:<br>(i) a list of Stakeholders;<br>(ii) a list of properties within the designation which the Requiring Authority does not own or have occupation rights to; and<br>(iii) methods to engage with Stakeholders and the owners and occupiers of properties identified in 3(a)(i) –(ii) above.<br>(b) A record of (a) shall be submitted with an Outline Plan for the relevant Stage of Work. |
| **4.** | **Designation Review**<br>As soon as reasonably practicable following Completion of Construction, the Requiring Authority shall:<br>(i) review the extent of the designation to identify any areas of designated land that it no longer requires for the on-going operation, maintenance or mitigation of effects of the Project; and<br>(ii) give notice to Auckland Council in accordance with section 182 of the RMA for the removal of those parts of the designation identified above. |
| **5.** | **Lapse**<br>In accordance with section 184(1)(c) of the RMA, this designation shall lapse if not given effect to within 20 years from the date on which it is included in the AUP. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 6. | **Network Utility Operators (Section 176 Approval)**<br>(a) Prior to the start of Construction Works, Network Utility Operators with existing infrastructure will not require written consent under section 176 of the RMA for the following activities:<br>(i) operation, maintenance and repair works;<br>(ii) minor renewal works to existing network utilities necessary for the on-going provision or security of supply of network utility operations;<br>(iii) minor works such as new service connections; and<br>(iv) the upgrade and replacement of existing network utilities in the same location with the same or similar effects on the work authorised by the designation as the existing utility.<br>(b) To the extent that a record of written approval is required for the activities listed above, this condition shall constitute written approval. |
| **Pre-construction conditions** | |
| 7. | **Outline Plan**<br>(a) An Outline Plan (or Plans) shall be prepared in accordance with section 176A of the RMA.<br>(b) Outline Plans (or Plan) may be submitted in parts or in stages to address particular activities (e.g. design or construction aspects), or a Stage of Work of the Project.<br>(c) Outline Plans shall include any management plan or plans that are relevant to the management of effects of those activities or Stage of Work, which may include:<br>(i) Construction Environmental Management Plan;<br>(ii) Construction Traffic Management Plan;<br>(iii) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan;<br>(iv) Network Integration Management Plan;<br>(v) Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan;<br>(vi) Historic Heritage Management Plan;<br>(vii) Ecological Management Plan;<br>(viii) Tree Management Plan; and<br>(ix) Network Utilities Management Plan. |
| 8. | **Network Utilities Integration**<br>The Requiring Authority shall consult with Network Utility Operators during the detailed design phase to consider opportunities to enable, or not preclude, the development of new network utility facilities including access to power and ducting within the Project, where practicable to do so. The consultation undertaken, opportunities considered, and whether or not they have been incorporated into the detailed design, shall be summarised in the Outline Plan(s) prepared for the Project. |
| | **Flood Hazard**<br>For the purpose of Condition 9:<br>(a) AEP – means Annual Exceedance Probability;<br>(b) Existing authorised habitable floor – means the floor level of any room (floor) in a residential building which is authorised and exists at the time the outline plan is submitted, excluding a laundry, bathroom, toilet or any room used solely as an entrance hall, passageway or garage;<br>(c) Flood prone area – means potential ponding areas that may flood and commonly comprise of topographical depression areas. The areas can occur naturally or as a result of constructed features;<br>(d) Maximum Probable Development – is the design case for consideration of future flows allowing for development within a catchment that takes into account the maximum impervious surface limits of the current zone or if the land is zoned Future Urban in the AUP, the probable level of development arising from zone changes;<br>(e) Pre-Project development – means existing site condition prior to the Project (including existing buildings and roadways); and<br>(f) Post-Project development – means site condition after the Project has been completed (including existing and new buildings and roadways). |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 9. | **Flood Hazard**<br>(a) The Project shall be designed to achieve the following flood risk outcomes:<br>(i) no increase in flood levels in a 1% AEP event for existing authorised habitable floors that are already subject to flooding or have a freeboard less than 500mm;<br>(ii) no increase in flood levels in a 1% AEP event for existing authorised community, commercial, industrial and network utility building floors that are already subject to flooding or have a freeboard less than 300mm;<br>(iii) maximum of 50mm increase in water level in a 1% AEP event outside and adjacent to the designation boundaries between the pre and post Project scenarios; and<br>(iv) no increase of Flood Hazard for the main access to authorised habitable dwellings existing at time the Outline Plan is submitted. The assessment shall be undertaken for the 1% AEP rainfall event.<br>(v) Where Flood Hazard is:<br>A. velocity x depth greater than or equal to 0.6; or<br>B. depth greater than 0.5m; or<br>C. velocity greater than 2m/s.<br>(b) Compliance with this condition shall be demonstrated in the Outline Plan, which shall include flood modelling of the pre-Project and post-Project 1% AEP flood levels (for Maximum Probable Development land use with allowances for climate change).<br>(c) Where the above outcomes can be achieved through alternative measures outside of the designation such as flood stop banks, flood walls, raising existing authorised habitable floor level and new overland flow paths or varied through agreement with the relevant landowner, confirmation shall be provided that any necessary landowner and statutory approvals have been obtained for that work or alternative outcome. |
| 10. | **Existing property access**<br>Prior to submission of the Outline Plan, consultation shall be undertaken with landowners and occupiers whose vehicle access to their property will be altered by the project. The Outline Plan shall demonstrate how safe reconfigured or alternate access will be provided, unless otherwise addressed with the affected landowner. |
| 11. | **Management Plans**<br>(a) Any management plan shall:<br>(i) be prepared and implemented in accordance with the relevant management plan condition;<br>(ii) be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person(s);<br>(iii) include sufficient detail relating to the management of effects associated with the relevant activities and/or Stage of Work to which it relates;<br>(iv) summarise comments received from Mana Whenua and stakeholders as required by the relevant management plan condition, along with a summary of where comments have:<br>A. been incorporated; and<br>B. where not incorporated, the reasons why.<br>(v) be submitted as part of an Outline Plan pursuant to section 176A of the RMA, with the exception of SCEMPs and CNVMP Schedules;<br>(vi) once finalised, uploaded to the Project website or equivalent virtual information source.<br>(b) Any management plan developed in accordance with Condition 11 may:<br>(i) be submitted in parts or in stages to address particular activities (e.g. design or construction aspects), a Stage of Work of the Project, or to address specific activities authorised by the designation;<br>(ii) except for material changes, be amended to reflect any changes in design, construction methods or management of effects without further process;<br>(c) If there is a material change required to a management plan which has been submitted with an Outline Plan, the revised part of the plan shall be submitted to the Council as an update to the Outline Plan or for Certification as soon as practicable following identification of the need for a revision;<br>(d) Any material changes to the SCEMP(s) are to be submitted to the Council for information. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 12. | **Stakeholder Communication and Engagement Management Plan (SCEMP)**<br>(a) A SCEMP shall be prepared in consultation with Stakeholders prior to the Start of Construction. The objective of the SCEMP is to identify how the public and Stakeholders will be engaged with throughout Construction Works.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the SCEMP shall include:<br>(i) a list of Stakeholders;<br>(ii) a list of properties within the designation which the Requiring Authority does not own or have occupation rights to;<br>(iii) methods to engage with Stakeholders and the owners of properties identified in 12(b)(ii) above;<br>(iv) the contact details for the Project Liaison Person. These details shall be on the Project website, or equivalent virtual information source, and prominently displayed at the main entrance(s) to the site(s);<br>(v) methods for engaging with Mana Whenua, to be developed in consultation with Mana Whenua;<br>(vi) methods and timing to engage with owners and occupiers whose access is directly affected;<br>(vii) methods to communicate key project milestones and the proposed hours of construction activities including outside of normal working hours and on weekends and public holidays, to the parties identified in 12(b)(i) and (ii) above; and<br>(viii) linkages and cross-references to communication and engagement methods set out in other conditions and management plans where relevant.<br>(c) Any SCEMP prepared for a Stage of Work shall be submitted to Council for information a minimum of ten working days prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. |
| 13. | **Network Integration Management Plan (NIMP)**<br>(a) At least six (6) months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the Requiring Authority shall prepare, in collaboration with other relevant road controlling authorities, a Network Integration Management Plan (NIMP).<br>(b) The objective of the NIMP is to identify how the Project will integrate with the planned transport network in the North West growth area to achieve an effective, efficient and safe land transport system. To achieve this objective, the NIMP shall include details of the:<br>(i) Project implementation approach and any staging of the Project, including design, management and operational matters; and<br>(ii) Sequencing of the Project with the planned transport network, including design, management and operational matters. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **14.** | **Cultural Advisory Report**<br>(a) At least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, Mana Whenua shall be invited to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report for the Project. The objective of the Cultural Advisory Report is to assist in understanding and identifying Ngā Taonga Tuku Iho ('treasures handed down by our ancestors') affected by the Project, to inform their management and protection.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the Requiring Authority shall invite Mana Whenua to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report that:<br>(i) identifies the cultural sites, landscapes and values that have the potential to be affected by the construction and operation of the Project;<br>(ii) sets out the desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values;<br>(iii) identifies traditional cultural practices within the area that may be impacted by the Project;<br>(iv) identifies opportunities for restoration and enhancement of identified cultural sites, landscapes and values within the Project area;<br>(v) taking into account the outcomes of 14(b)(i) to (iv) above, identify cultural matters and principles that should be considered in the development of the ULDMP and HHMP, and the CMP referred to in Condition 20;<br>(vi) identifies and (if possible) nominates traditional names along the Project alignment. Noting there may be formal statutory processes outside the Project required in any decision-making.<br>(c) The desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values identified in the Cultural Advisory Report shall be discussed with Mana Whenua and those outcomes reflected in the relevant management plans where practicable;<br>(d) Conditions 14(b) and (c) will cease to apply if:<br>(i) Mana Whenua have been invited to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report by a date at least six months prior to start of Construction Works; and<br>(ii) Mana Whenua have not provided a Cultural Advisory Report within six months prior to start of Construction Works. |
| | **Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan (ULDMP)** |
| **15.** | (a) A ULDMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the ULDMP(s) is to:<br>(i) enable integration of the Project's permanent works into the surrounding landscape and urban context; and<br>(ii) ensure that the Project manages potential adverse landscape and visual effects as far as practicable and contributes to a quality urban environment.<br>(b) Mana Whenua shall be invited to participate in the development of the ULDMP(s) to provide input into relevant cultural landscape and design matters including how desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values identified and discussed in accordance with Condition 14 may be reflected in the ULDMP.<br>(c) Relevant stakeholders shall be invited to participate in the development of the ULDMP at least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **16.** | (a) To achieve the objective set out in Condition 15, the ULDMP(s) shall provide details of how the project:<br>(i) is designed to integrate with the adjacent urban (or proposed urban) and landscape context, including the surrounding existing or proposed topography, urban environment (i.e. centres and density of built form), natural environment, landscape character and open space zones;<br>(ii) provides appropriate walking and cycling connectivity to, and interfaces with, existing or proposed adjacent land uses, public transport infrastructure and walking and cycling connections;<br>(iii) promotes inclusive access (where appropriate);<br>(iv) promotes a sense of personal safety by aligning with best practice guidelines, such as:<br>A. Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED) principles;<br>B. Safety in Design (SID) requirements; and<br>C. Maintenance in Design (MID) requirements and anti-vandalism/anti-graffiti measures; and<br>(v) Interfaces with the operational areas of commercial premises within business zoned land, including loading areas, internal circulation and car parking, where practicable.<br>(b) The ULDMP shall be prepared in general accordance with:<br>(i) Waka Kotahi Urban Design Guidelines: Bridging the Gap (2013) or any subsequent updated version;<br>(ii) NZTA Landscape Guidelines (2018) or any subsequent updated version; and<br>(iii) Waka Kotahi P39 Standard Specification for Highway Landscape Treatments (2013) or any subsequent updated version. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **17.** | The ULDMP(s) shall include:<br>(a) a concept plan – which depicts the overall landscape and urban design concept, and explain the rationale for the landscape and urban design proposals;<br>(b) developed design concepts, including principles for walking and cycling facilities and public transport; and<br>(c) landscape and urban design details – that cover the following:<br>(i) road design – elements such as intersection form, carriageway gradient and associated earthworks contouring including cut and fill batters, shaped to a natural profile where practicable and appropriate to the surrounding context, and the interface with adjacent land uses and existing roads (including slip lanes), benching, spoil disposal sites, median width and treatment, roadside width and treatment;<br>(ii) roadside elements – such as lighting, fencing, wayfinding and signage;<br>(iii) architectural and landscape treatment of all major structures, including bridges and retaining walls;<br>(iv) architectural and landscape treatment of noise barriers;<br>(v) landscape treatment and planting of permanent stormwater control wetlands and swales;<br>(vi) integration of passenger transport;<br>(vii) pedestrian and cycle facilities including paths, road crossings and dedicated pedestrian/ cycle bridges or underpasses;<br>(viii) historic heritage places including Huapai Tavern (AUP:OP Schedule 14.1 #00482), with reference to the HHMP (Condition 26); and<br>(ix) re-instatement of construction and site compound areas; and<br>(x) re-instatement of features to be retained such as:<br>A. boundary features;<br>B. landscaping;<br>C. driveways;<br>D. accessways; and<br>E. fences.<br>(d) The ULDMP shall also include the following planting details and maintenance requirements:<br>(i) planting design details including:<br>A. identification of existing trees and vegetation that will be retained with reference to the TMP and Ecological Management Plan. Where practicable, mature trees and native vegetation should be retained;<br>B. street trees, shrubs and ground cover suitable for the location;<br>C. treatment of fill slopes to integrate with adjacent land use, streams, Riparian margins and open space zones;<br>D. identification of any planting requirements under the Ecological Management Plan (Conditions 28) and TMP (Condition 29); and<br>E. integration of any planting requirements required by conditions of any resource consents for the project;<br>(ii) a planting programme including the staging of planting in relation to the construction programme which shall, as far as practicable, include provision for planting within each planting season following completion of works in each Stage of Work; and<br>(iii) detailed specifications relating to the following:<br>A. weed control and clearance;<br>B. pest animal management (to support plant establishment);<br>C. ground preparation (top soiling and decompaction);<br>D. mulching; and<br>E. plant sourcing and planting, including hydroseeding and grassing, and use of eco-sourced species |
| **Specific Outline Plan requirements** | |
| **Construction conditions** | |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 18. | **Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP)**<br>(a) A CEMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the CEMP is to set out the management procedures and construction methods to be undertaken to, avoid, remedy or mitigate any adverse effects associated with Construction Works as far as practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CEMP shall include:<br>(i) the roles and responsibilities of staff and contractors;<br>(ii) details of the site or project manager and the Project Liaison Person, including their contact details (phone and email address);<br>(iii) the Construction Works programmes and the staging approach, and the proposed hours of work;<br>(iv) details of the proposed construction yards including temporary screening when adjacent to residential zones;<br>(v) details of the proposed construction lighting;<br>(vi) methods for controlling dust and the removal of debris and demolition of construction materials from public roads or places;<br>(vii) methods for providing for the health and safety of the general public;<br>(viii) measures to mitigate flood hazard effects such as siting stockpiles out of floodplains, minimising obstruction to flood flows, actions to respond to warnings of heavy rain;<br>(ix) procedures for incident management;<br>(x) location and procedures for the refuelling and maintenance of plant and equipment to avoid discharges of fuels or lubricants to watercourses;<br>(xi) measures to address the storage of fuels, lubricants, hazardous and/or dangerous materials, along with contingency procedures to address emergency spill response(s) and clean up;<br>(xii) summary of measures included to respond to matters raised in engagement, if not already covered above;<br>(xiii) procedures for responding to complaints about Construction Works; and<br>(xiv) methods for amending and updating the CEMP as required. |
| 19. | **Complaints Register**<br>(a) At all times during Construction Works, a record of any complaints received about the Construction Works shall be maintained. The record shall include:<br>(i) the date, time and nature of the complaint;<br>(ii) the name, phone number and address of the complainant (unless the complainant wishes to remain anonymous);<br>(iii) measures taken to respond to the complaint (including a record of the response provided to the complainant) or confirmation of no action if deemed appropriate;<br>(iv) the outcome of the investigation into the complaint; and<br>(v) any other activities in the area, unrelated to the Project that may have contributed to the complaint, such as non-project construction, fires, traffic accidents or unusually dusty conditions generally.<br>(b) A copy of the Complaints Register required by this condition shall be made available to the Manager upon request as soon as practicable after the request is made. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 20. | **Cultural Monitoring Plan (CMP)**<br>(a) Prior to the start of Construction Works, a CMP shall be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person(s) identified in collaboration with Mana Whenua. The objective of the CMP is to identify methods for undertaking cultural monitoring to assist with management of any cultural effects during Construction works.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CMP shall include:<br>(i) Requirements for formal dedication or cultural interpretation to be undertaken prior to start of Construction Works in areas identified as having significance to Mana Whenua;<br>(ii) Requirements and protocols for cultural inductions for contractors and subcontractors;<br>(iii) Identification of activities, sites and areas where cultural monitoring is required during particular Construction Works;<br>(iv) Identification of personnel to undertake cultural monitoring, including any geographic definition of their responsibilities; and<br>(v) Details of personnel to assist with management of any cultural effects identified during cultural monitoring, including implementation of the Accidental Discovery Protocol<br>(c) If Enabling Works involving soil disturbance are undertaken prior to the start of Construction Works, an Enabling Works CMP shall be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person identified in collaboration with Mana Whenua. This plan may be prepared as a standalone Enabling Works CMP or be included in the main Construction Works CMP.<br><br>**Advice note:**<br>Where appropriate, the CMP shall align with the requirements of other conditions of the designation and resource consents for the Project which require monitoring during Construction Works. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 21. | **Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP)**<br>(a) A CTMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the CTMP is to avoid, remedy or mitigate, as far as practicable, adverse construction traffic effects.<br>(b) To achieve this objective, the CTMP shall include:<br>(i) methods to manage the effects of temporary traffic management activities on traffic;<br>(ii) measures to ensure the safety of all transport users;<br>(iii) the estimated numbers, frequencies, routes and timing of traffic movements, including any specific non-working or non-movement hours to manage vehicular and pedestrian traffic near educational facilities or to manage traffic congestion;<br>(iv) site access routes and access points for heavy vehicles, the size and location of parking areas for plant, construction vehicles and the vehicles of workers and visitors;<br>(v) identification of detour routes and other methods to ensure the safe management and maintenance of traffic flows, including public transport services, pedestrians and cyclists;<br>(vi) methods to maintain access to and within property and/or private roads where practicable, or to provide alternative arrangements when it will not be, including details of how access is managed for loading and unloading of goods. Engagement with landowners or occupiers whose access is directly affected shall be undertaken in accordance with the SCEMP;<br>(vii) the management approach to loads on heavy vehicles, including covering loads of fine material, the use of wheel-wash facilities at site exit points and the timely removal of any material deposited or spilled on public roads;<br>(viii) methods that will be undertaken to communicate traffic management measures to affected road users (e.g. residents / public / stakeholders / emergency services);<br>(ix) details of minimum network performance parameters during the construction phase, including any measures to monitor compliance with the performance parameters; and<br>(x) details of any measures proposed to be implemented in the event of thresholds identified in 21(b)(ix) being exceeded.<br>(c) Auditing, monitoring and reporting requirements relating to traffic management activities shall be undertaken in accordance with the New Zealand Guide to Temporary Traffic Management (April 2023) or any subsequent version. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 22. | **Construction Noise Standards**<br>(a) Construction noise shall be measured and assessed in accordance with NZS6803:1999 Acoustics – Construction Noise and shall comply with the noise standards set out in the following table as far as practicable:<br><br>**Table 22-1 Construction Noise Standards**<br><br>(b) Where compliance with the noise standards set out in Table 22-1 is not practicable, the methodology in Condition 25 shall apply. |

| Day of week | Time period | $L_{Aeq(15min)}$ | $L_{AFmax}$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Occupied activity sensitive to noise** | | | |
| Weekday | 0630h - 0730h | 55 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 70 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 65 dB | 80 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| Saturday | 0630h - 0730h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 70 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| Sunday and Public Holidays | 0630h - 0730h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 55 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| **Other occupied buildings** | | | |
| All | 0730h – 1800h | 70 dB | |
| | 1800h – 0730h | 75 dB | |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 23. | **Construction Vibration Standards**<br>(a) Construction vibration shall be measured in accordance with ISO 4866:2010 Mechanical vibration and shock – Vibration of fixed structures – Guidelines for the measurement of vibrations and evaluation of their effects on structures and shall comply with the vibration standards set out in Table 23-1 as far as practicable.<br><br>**Table 23-1 Construction Vibration Standards** |

| Receiver | Details | Category A* | Category B* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Occupied activities sensitive to noise | Night-time 2000h - 0630h | 0.3mm/s ppv | 1mm/s ppv |
| | Daytime 0630h - 2000h | 1mm/s ppv | 5mm/s ppv |
| Other occupied buildings | Daytime 0630h - 2000h | 2mm/s ppv | 5mm/s ppv |
| All other buildings | At all other times Vibration transient | 5mm/s ppv | BS 5228-2** Table B2 |
| | At all other times Vibration continuous | 5mm/s ppv | BS 5228-2** 50% of Table B2 values |

** Refer to NZTA State highway construction and maintenance noise and vibration guide for further explanation regarding Category A and B criteria*

*** BS 5228-2:2009 'Code of practice for noise and vibration control on construction and open sites – Part 2: Vibration'*

(b) Where compliance with the vibration standards set out in Table 23-1 is not practicable, the methodology in Condition 25 shall apply.

(c) If measured or predicted vibration from construction activities exceeds the Category A criteria, a Suitably Qualified Person shall assess and manage construction vibration during those activities.

(d) If measured or predicted vibration from construction activities exceeds the Category B criteria those activities must only proceed if vibration effects on affected buildings are assessed, monitored and mitigated by a Suitably Qualified Person.

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **24.** | **Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP)**<br>(a) A CNVMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for Stage of Work. A CNVMP shall be implemented during the Stage of Work to which it relates. The objective of the CNVMP is to provide a framework for the development and implementation of the Best Practicable Option for the management of construction noise and vibration effects to achieve the construction noise and vibration standards set out in Conditions 22 and 23 to the extent practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CNVMP shall be prepared in accordance with Annex E2 of the New Zealand Standard NZS6803:1999 'Acoustics – Construction Noise' (NZS6803:1999) and shall as a minimum, address the following:<br>(i) description of the works and anticipated equipment/processes;<br>(ii) hours of operation, including times and days when construction activities would occur;<br>(iii) the construction noise and vibration standards for the project;<br>(iv) identification of receivers where noise and vibration standards apply;<br>(v) a hierarchy of management and mitigation options, including any requirements to limit night works and works during other sensitive times, including Sundays and public holidays as far as practicable;<br>(vi) methods and frequency for monitoring and reporting on construction noise and vibration;<br>(vii) procedures for communication and engagement with nearby residents and stakeholders, including notification of proposed construction activities, the period of construction activities, and management of noise and vibration complaints.<br>(viii) contact details of the Project Liaison Person;<br>(ix) procedures for the regular training of the operators of construction equipment to minimise noise and vibration as well as expected construction site behaviours for all workers;<br>(x) procedures and requirements for the preparation of a Schedule to the CNVMP (Schedule) for those areas where compliance with the noise Condition 22 and/or vibration standards Condition 23 Category A or Category B will not be practicable;<br>(xi) identification of trigger levels for undertaking building condition surveys, which shall be below Category B day time levels;<br>(xii) procedures and trigger levels for undertaking building condition surveys before and after works to determine whether any cosmetic or structural damage has occurred as a result of construction vibration;<br>(xiii) methodology and programme of desktop and field audits and inspections to be undertaken to ensure that the CNVMP, Schedules and the best practicable option for management of effects are being implemented; and<br>(xiv) requirements for review and update of the CNVMP. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 25. | **Schedule to a CNVMP**<br>(a) A Schedule to the CNVMP (Schedule) shall be prepared prior to the start of the construction to which it relates by a Suitably Qualified Person, in consultation with the owners and occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule, when:<br>(i) Construction noise is either predicted or measured to exceed the noise standards in Condition 22<br>(ii) Construction vibration is either predicted or measured to exceed the Category A standard at the receivers in Condition 23.<br>(b) The objective of the Schedule is to set out the Best Practicable Option measures to manage noise and/or vibration effects of the construction activity beyond those measures set out in the CNVMP.<br>(c) To achieve the objective, the Schedule shall include details such as:<br>(i) construction activity location, start and finish times;<br>(ii) the nearest neighbours to the construction activity;<br>(iii) the predicted noise and/or vibration level for all receivers where the levels are predicted or measured to exceed the applicable standards in Conditions 22 and 23 and the predicted duration of the exceedance;<br>(iv) for works proposed between 2000h and 0630h, the reasons why the proposed works must be undertaken during these hours and why they cannot be practicably undertaken during the daytime;<br>(v) the proposed mitigation options that have been selected, and the options that have been discounted as being impracticable and the reasons why;<br>(vi) a summary of the consultation undertaken with owners and occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule, and how consultation has and has not been taken into account; and<br>(vii) location, times and types of monitoring.<br>(d) The Schedule shall be submitted to the Manager for information at least 5 working days (except in unforeseen circumstances) in advance of Construction Works that are covered by the scope of the Schedule and shall form part of the CNVMP. If any comments are received from the Manager, these shall be considered by the Requiring Authority prior to implementation of the Schedule.<br>(e) Where material changes are made to a Schedule required by this condition, the Requiring Authority shall consult the owners and/or occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule prior to submitting the amended Schedule to the Manager for information in accordance with (d) above. The amended Schedule shall document the consultation undertaken with those owners and occupiers, and how consultation outcomes have and have not been taken into account. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **26.** | **Historic Heritage Management Plan (HHMP)**<br>(a) A HHMP shall be prepared in consultation with Council, HNZPT and Mana Whenua prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the HHMP is to protect historic heritage and to remedy and mitigate any residual effects as far as practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the HHMP shall identify:<br>(i) any adverse direct and indirect effects on historic heritage sites and measures to appropriately avoid, remedy or mitigate any such effects, including a tabulated summary of these effects and measures;<br>(ii) methods for the identification and assessment of potential historic heritage places within the Designation to inform detailed design;<br>(iii) known historic heritage places and potential archaeological sites within the Designation, including identifying any archaeological sites for which an Archaeological Authority under the HNZPTA will be sought or has been granted;<br>(iv) any unrecorded archaeological sites or post-1900 heritage sites within the Designation, which shall also be documented and recorded;<br>(v) roles, responsibilities and contact details of Project personnel, Council and HNZPT representatives, Mana Whenua representatives, and relevant agencies involved with heritage and archaeological matters including surveys, monitoring of Construction Works, compliance with AUP accidental discovery rule, and monitoring of conditions;<br>(vi) specific areas to be investigated, monitored and recorded to the extent these are directly affected by the Project;<br>(vii) The proposed methodology for investigating and recording post-1900 historic heritage sites (including buildings) that need to be destroyed, demolished or relocated, including details of their condition, measures to mitigate any adverse effects and timeframe for implementing the proposed methodology, in accordance with the HNZPT Archaeological Guidelines Series No.1: Investigation and Recording of Buildings and Standing Structures (November 2018), or any subsequent version;<br>(viii) methods to acknowledge cultural values identified through Condition 14 where archaeological sites also involve ngā taonga tuku iho (treasures handed down by our ancestors) and where feasible and practicable to do so;<br>(ix) methods for avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects on historic heritage places and sites within the Designation during Construction Works as far as practicable. These methods shall include, but are not limited to:<br>A. security fencing or hoardings around historic heritage places to protect them from damage during construction or unauthorised access;<br>B. measures to mitigate adverse effects on historic heritage sites that achieve positive historic heritage outcomes such as increased public awareness and interpretation signage; and<br>C. training requirements and inductions for contractors and subcontractors on historic heritage places within the Designation, legal obligations relating to unexpected discoveries and the AUP Accidental Discovery Rule (E11.6.1). The training shall be undertaken prior to the Start of Construction, under the guidance of a Suitably Qualified Person and Mana Whenua representatives (to the extent the training relates to cultural values identified under Condition 14).<br>(x) For Huapai Tavern (AUP:OP Schedule 14.1 #00482) measures and methods shall be identified to:<br>A. appropriately avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse construction effects from the re-location of the buildings;<br>B. appropriately re-locate the Huapai Tavern (AUP:OP Schedule 14.1 #00482) within the area identified in Schedule 4 in a manner that respects the heritage value of the buildings;<br>C. identify non-original additions to the Huapai Tavern which may be removed without compromising the heritage values of the building; and<br>D. identify long term protection management of heritage elements of the buildings |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| | **Advice note:**<br>**Accidental Discoveries**<br>The requirements for accidental discoveries of heritage items are set out in Rule E11.6.1 of the AUP and in the NZTA Minimum Standard P45 Accidental Archaeological Discovery Specification, or any subsequent version.<br><br>The Huapai Tavern is scheduled under the AUP(OP). Long term protection management will be identified though Condition 26(b)(x)(D) until the extent of place is amended through a Plan Change process to reflect the new location once relocated. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 27. | **Pre-Construction Ecological Survey**<br>(a) At the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, an updated ecological survey shall be undertaken by a Suitably Qualified Person. The purpose of the survey is to inform ecological management by:<br>(i) confirming whether the species of value within the Identified Biodiversity Areas recorded in the Identified Biodiversity Area Schedule 2 are still present; and<br>(ii) confirming whether the project will or may have a moderate or greater level of ecological effect on ecological species of value, prior to implementation of impact management measures with the level of effect to be determined in accordance with Table 10 of the EIANZ guidelines as included in Schedule 3 to these conditions (or subsequent updated version of the table).<br>(b) If the ecological survey confirms the presence of ecological species of value in accordance with Condition 27(a)(i) and that effects are likely in accordance with Condition 27(a)(ii) then an Ecological Management Plan (or Plans) shall be prepared in accordance with Condition 28 for these areas (Confirmed Biodiversity Areas). |

**28. Ecological Management Plan (EMP)**

(a) An EMP shall be prepared for any Confirmed Biodiversity Areas (confirmed through Condition 27) prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the EMP is to minimise effects of the Project on the ecological features of value of Confirmed Biodiversity Areas as far as practicable.

(b) To achieve the objective, the EMP shall set out the methods which may include:

(i) If an EMP is required in accordance with Condition 27(b) for the presence of long tail bats:

A. measures to minimise as far as practicable, disturbance from construction activities within the vicinity of any active long tail bat roosts (including maternity) that are discovered through survey until such roosts are confirmed to be vacant of bats;

B. how the timing of any construction work in the vicinity of any maternity long tail bat roosts will be limited to outside the bat maternity period (between December and March) where reasonably practicable;

C. details of areas where vegetation is to be retained where practicable for the purposes of the connectivity of long tail bats;

D. details of how bat connectivity will be provided and maintained (e.g. through the presence of suitable indigenous or exotic trees or artificial alternatives). This could include identification of areas and timeframes for establishment of advance restoration / mitigation planting taking into account land ownership, accessibility and the timing of available funding, measures to manage the effects of light spill on bat connectivity as far as practicable; and

E. where mitigation to minimise effects is not practicable, details of any offsetting proposed.

(ii) If an EMP is required in accordance with Condition 27(b) for the presence of threatened or at risk wetland birds:

A. how the timing of any Construction Works shall be undertaken outside of the bird breeding season (September to February) where practicable;

B. where works are required within the Confirmed Biodiversity Area during the bird season, methods to minimise adverse effects on Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds;

C. undertaking a nesting bird survey of Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds prior to any Construction Works taking place within a 50m radius of any identified Wetlands (including establishment of construction areas adjacent to Wetlands). Surveys should be repeated at the beginning of each wetland bird breeding season and following periods of construction inactivity;

D. what protection and buffer measures will be provided where nesting Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds are identified within 50m of any construction area (including laydown areas). Measures could include:

a. a 20 m buffer area around the nest location and retaining vegetation. The buffer areas should be demarcated where necessary to protect birds from encroachment. This might include the use of marker poles, tape and signage;

b. monitoring of the nesting Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds by a Suitably Qualified Person. Construction works within the 20m nesting buffer areas should not occur until the Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds have fledged from the nest location (approximately 30 days from egg laying to fledging) as confirmed by a Suitably Qualified Person;

c. minimising the disturbance from the works if construction works are required within 50 m of a nest, as advised by a Suitably Qualified Person;

d. adopting a 10m setback where practicable, between the edge of Wetlands and construction areas (along the edge of the stockpile / laydown area); and

e. minimising light spill from construction areas into Wetlands

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| | (c) The EMP shall be consistent with any ecological management measures to be undertaken in compliance with conditions of any regional resource consents granted for the Project.<br>**Advice note:**<br>Depending on the potential effects of the Project, the regional consents for the Project may include the following monitoring and management plans:<br>(i) Stream and/or wetland restoration plans;<br>(ii) Vegetation restoration plans; and<br>(iii) Fauna management plans (eg avifauna, herpetofauna, bats). |
| **29.** | **Tree Management Plan (TMP)**<br>(a) Prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work, a TMP shall be prepared. The objective of the TMP is to avoid, remedy or mitigate effects of construction activities on trees identified as protected or notable in the Auckland Unitary Plan.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the TMP shall:<br>(i) confirm the trees that will be affected by the project work and are identified as protected or notable in the Auckland Unitary Plan; and<br>(ii) demonstrate how the design and location of project works has avoided, remedied or mitigated any effects on any tree identified in 29(b)(i) above. This may include:<br>A. any opportunities to relocate listed trees where practicable.<br>B. planting to replace trees that require removal (with reference to the ULDMP planting design details in Condition 17);<br>C. tree protection zones and tree protection measures such as protective fencing, ground protection and physical protection of roots, trunks and branches; and<br>D. methods for work within the rootzone of trees that are to be retained in line with accepted arboricultural standards.<br>(iii) demonstrate how the tree management measures (outlined in 29(b)(ii)A – D above) are consistent with conditions of any resource consents granted for the project in relation to managing construction effects on trees. |
| **30.** | **Network Utility Management Plan (NUMP)**<br>(a) A NUMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the NUMP is to set out a framework for protecting, relocating and working in proximity to existing network utilities.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the NUMP shall include methods to:<br>(i) provide access for maintenance at all reasonable times, or emergency works at all times during construction activities;<br>(ii) protect and where necessary, relocate existing network utilities;<br>(iii) manage the effects of dust and any other material potentially resulting from construction activities and able to cause material damage, beyond normal wear and tear to overhead transmission lines in the Project area;<br>(iv) demonstrate compliance with relevant standards and Codes of Practice including, where relevant, the NZECP 34:2001 New Zealand Electrical Code of Practice for Electrical Safe Distances 2001; AS/NZS 4853:2012 Electrical hazards on Metallic Pipelines; and AS/NZS 2885 Pipelines – Gas and Liquid Petroleum.<br>(c) The NUMP shall be prepared in consultation with the relevant Network Utility Operator(s) who have existing assets that are directly affected by the Project.<br>(d) Any comments received from the Network Utility Operator shall be considered when finalising the NUMP.<br>(e) Any amendments to the NUMP related to the assets of a Network Utility Operator shall be prepared in consultation with that asset owner. |
| | **Operational conditions** |

<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Condition</th></tr>
<tr><td>31.</td><td>Station Noise<br>All mechanical and electrical services (including Public Address system) shall be designed to comply with the following noise rating levels and maximum noise levels, as measured and assessed at any residential zone site boundary:<br>
<table>
<tr><th>Time</th><th>Noise level</th></tr>
<tr><td>Monday to Saturday 7am-10pm</td><td rowspan="2">50dB $L_{Aeq}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>Sunday 9am-6pm</td></tr>
<tr><td>All other times</td><td>40dB $L_{Aeq}$<br>75dB $L_{AFmax}$</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

## Attachments

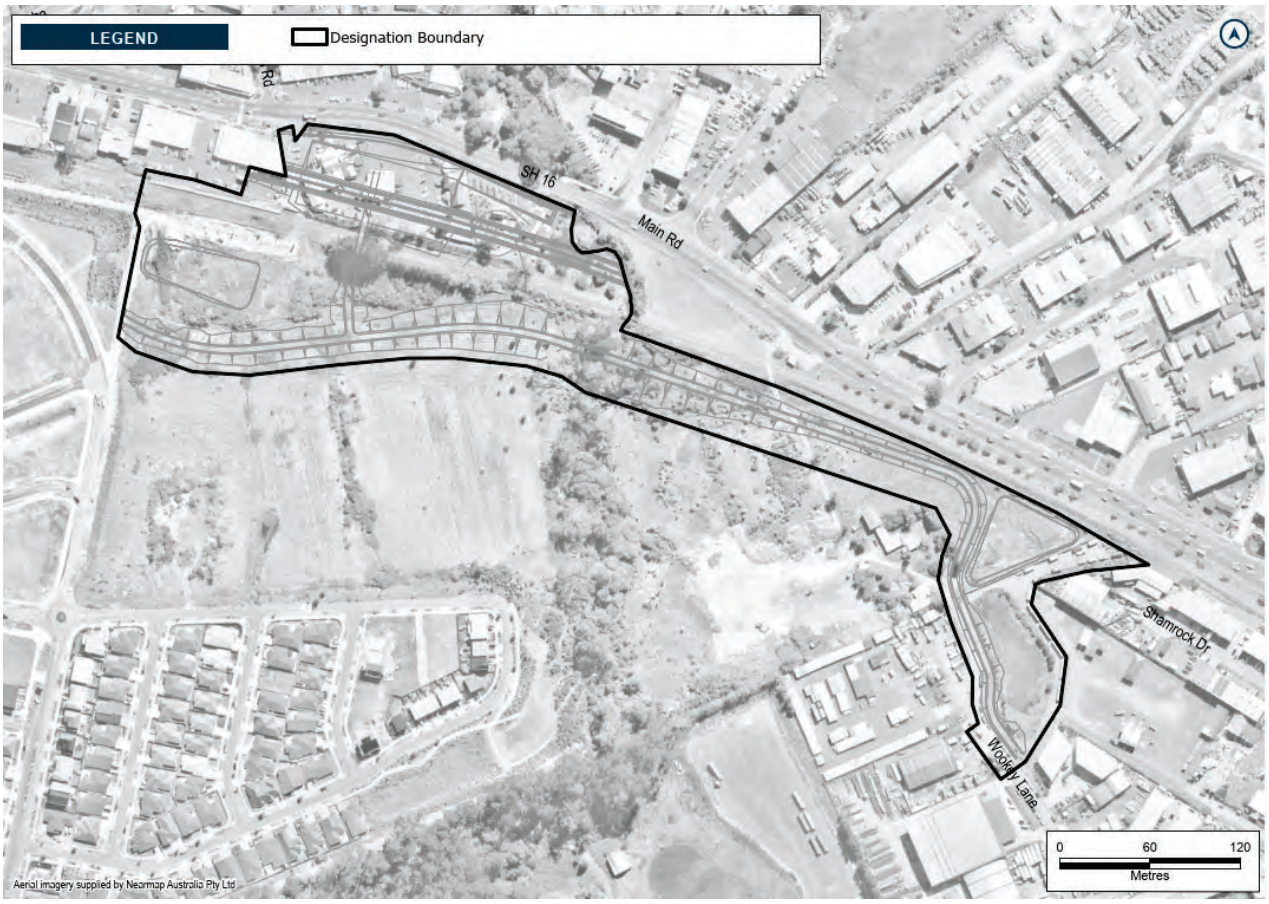
## Schedule 1: General Accordance Plans and Information

### Project Description

The proposed work is the construction, operation, and maintenance of a rapid transit station in Kumeū, including active transport facilities and associated infrastructure. The proposed work is shown in the following Concept Plan and includes:

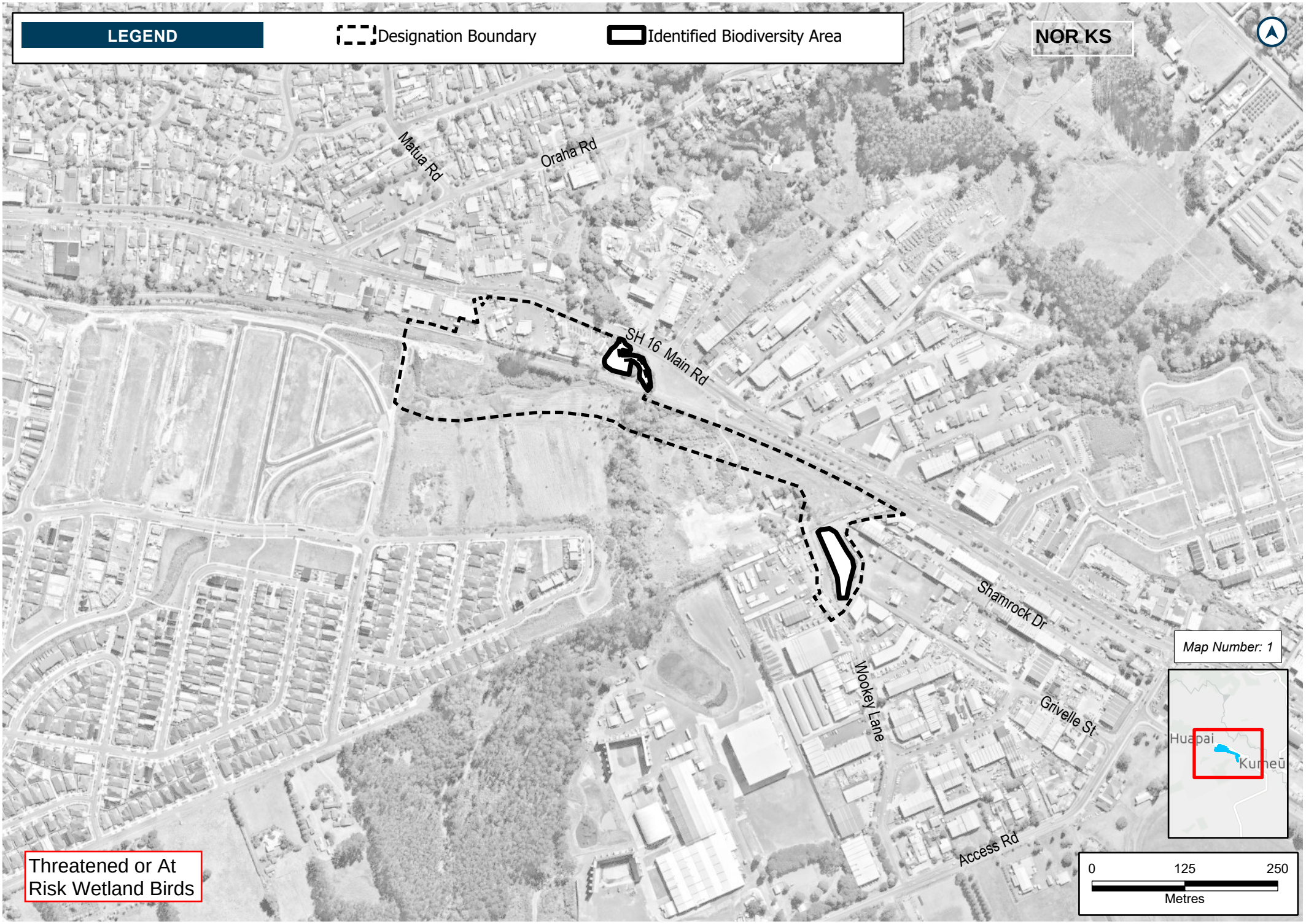
(a) A new rapid transit station, including active transport facilities;
(b) Associated works including transport interchange facilities, accessway, bridges, embankments, retaining, culverts, stormwater management systems; and
(c) Construction activities, including vegetation removal, construction compounds, laydown areas, bridge works area, construction traffic management and the re-grade of driveways.

### Concept Plan



**Schedule 2: Identified Biodiversity Areas**


LEGEND
Designation Boundary
Identified Biodiversity Area
Long-tailed Bat
Matua Rd
Tapu Rd
Meryl Ave
Main Rd
Station Rd
Trigg Rd
Foster Rd
Motu Rd
Puke Rd
Tawa Rd
Pohona Rd
Hanham Rd
Waitakere Rd
Oraha Rd
Shamrock Dr
Weza Lane
Riverhead Rd
Grivelle St
Wookey Lane
Access Rd
Trotting Course Dr
Boord Cres
SH 16
Taupaki Rd
Nixon Rd
Nelson Rd
Old Railway Rd
Riverland Rd
Coatesville-Riverhead Hwy
Moontide Rd
Brigham Lane
Grove Way
Pitoitoi Kaipara Portage Dr
Riverhead Point Dr
Rd
Short Rd
Totara Rd
Joseph McDonald Dr
Boyes Ave
Ripeka Lane
Ngahue Cres
Nils Andersen Rd
Airport Rd
Kennedys Rd
Brigham Creek Rd
Marnari Rd
Spedding Rd
Hailes Rd
Fred Taylor Dr
Northside Dr
Auckland-Kumeu Mwy
Upper Harbour SH 18 Mwy
Trig Rd
Ryans Rd
Henwood Rd
Dunlop Rd
0
780
1,560
Metres

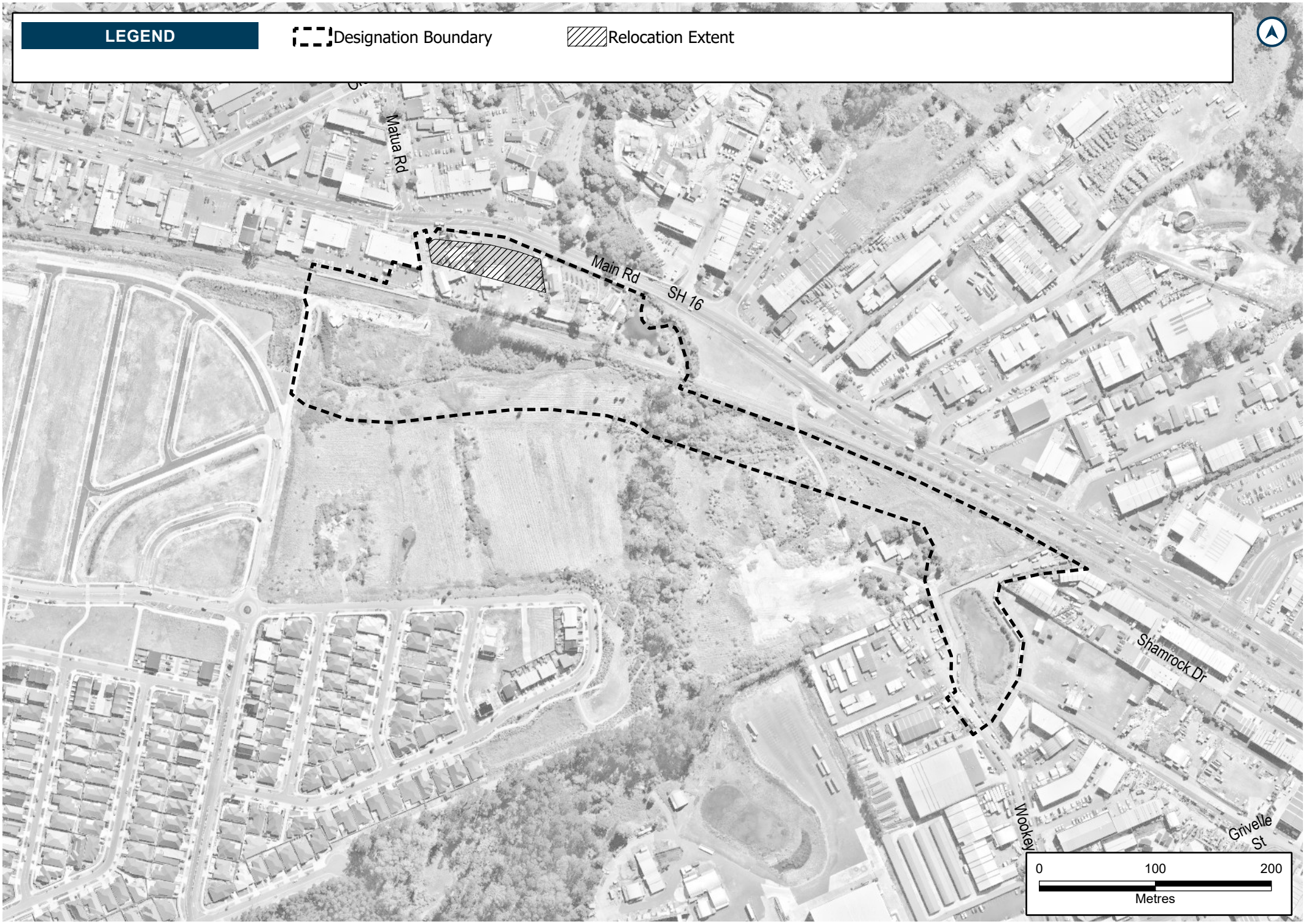

LEGEND
Designation Boundary
Identified Biodiversity Area
NOR KS
Matua Rd
Oraha Rd
SH 16 Main Rd
Shamrock Dr
Wookey Lane
Grivelle St
Access Rd
Map Number: 1
Huapai
Kumeū
0
125
250
Metres
Threatened or At Risk Wetland Birds
Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-036-Strategic-Kumeu-Sth-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093410\GIS\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx

**Schedule 3: Table 10 of the 2018 EIANZ Guidelines**

Criteria for describing level of effects (Adapted from Regini (2000) and Boffa Miskell (2011))

| Ecological Value → <br><br> Magnitude ↓ | Very high | High | Moderate | Low | Negligible |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Very high | Very high | Very high | High | Moderate | Low |
| High | Very high | Very high | Moderate | Low | Very low |
| Moderate | High | High | Moderate | Low | Very low |
| Low | Moderate | Low | Low | Very low | Very low |
| Negligible | Low | Very low | Very low | Very low | Very low |
| Positive | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain |

**Schedule 4: Huapai Tavern Relocation**


LEGEND
Designation Boundary
Relocation Extent
Matua Rd
Main Rd
SH 16
Shamrock Dr
Grivelle St
0
100
200
Metres

**Appendix E – NZTA Modifications to NoR HS conditions (clean)**

## [# Council to allocate #] – Huapai Station

| | |
|---|---|
| Designation Number | XXXX |
| Requiring Authority | New Zealand Transport Agency |
| Location | Meryl Avenue, between Matua Road and State Highway 16, Huapai. |
| Lapse Date | In accordance with section 184(1)(c) of the RMA, this designation shall lapse if not given effect to within 20 years from the date on which it is included in the AUP. |

# Purpose

Construction, operation and maintenance of a public transport station and associated facilities.

# Conditions

**Abbreviations and definitions**

| Acronym/Term | Definition |
|---|---|
| Activity sensitive to noise | Any dwelling, visitor accommodation, boarding house, marae, papakāinga, integrated residential development, retirement village, supported residential care, care centre, lecture theatre in a tertiary education facility, classroom in an education facility and healthcare facility with an overnight stay facility |
| AUP | Auckland Unitary Plan |
| BPO or Best Practicable Option | Has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA 1991 |
| CEMP | Construction Environmental Management Plan |
| Certification of material changes to management plans | Confirmation from the Manager that a material change to a management plan has been prepared in accordance with the condition to which it relates.<br>A material change to a management plan shall be deemed certified:<br>(a) where the Requiring Authority has received written confirmation from Council that the material change to the management plan is certified; or<br>(b) ten working days from the submission of the material change to the management plan where no written confirmation of certification has been received |
| CMP | Cultural Monitoring Plan |
| CNVMP | Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan |
| CNVMP Schedule or Schedule | A schedule to the CNVMP |
| Completion of Construction | When construction of the Project (or part of the Project) is complete and it is available for use |
| Confirmed Biodiversity Areas | Areas recorded in the Identified Biodiversity Area Schedule where the ecological values and effects have been confirmed through the ecological survey under Condition 27. |
| Construction Works | Activities undertaken to construct the Project excluding Enabling Works |
| Council | Auckland Council |
| CTMP | Construction Traffic Management Plan |
| Educational facility | Facility used for education to secondary level<br>Includes: |

| | |
|---|---|
| | • schools and outdoor education facilities; and<br>• accommodation, administrative, cultural, religious, health, retail and communal facilities accessory to the above<br>Excludes:<br>• care centres; and<br>• tertiary education facilities |
| EIANZ Guidelines | Ecological Impact Assessment: EIANZ guidelines for use in New Zealand: terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems, second edition, dated May 2018 |
| EMP | Ecological Management Plan |
| Enabling works | Includes, but is not limited to, the following and similar activities:<br>(a) geotechnical investigations (including trial embankments);<br>(b) archaeological site investigations;<br>(c) formation of access for geotechnical investigations;<br>(d) establishment of site yards, site entrances and fencing;<br>(e) constructing and sealing site access roads;<br>(f) demolition or removal of buildings and structures;<br>(g) relocation of services; and<br>(h) establishment of mitigation measures (such as erosion and sediment control measures, temporary noise walls, earth bunds and planting) |
| HHMP | Historic Heritage Management Plan |
| HNZPT | Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga |
| HNZPTA | Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 |
| Identified Biodiversity Area | Means an area or areas of features of ecological value where the Project ecologist has identified that the project will potentially have a moderate or greater level of ecological effect, prior to implementation of impact management measures, as determined in accordance with the EIANZ guidelines |
| Manager | The Manager – Resource Consents of the Auckland Council, or authorised delegate |
| Mana Whenua | Mana Whenua as referred to in the conditions are considered to be, but not limited to, the following (in no particular order), who at the time of Notice of Requirement expressed a desire to be involved in the Project:<br>• Te Kawerau ā Maki<br>• Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara<br>• Te Ākitai Waiohua |
| Network Utility Operator | Has the same meaning as set out in section 166 of the RMA |
| NIMP | Network Integration Management Plan |
| NOR | Notice of Requirement |
| North West growth area | Constitutes the Future Urban Zone, or live zoned urban land in Kumeū, Huapai, Redhills, Redhills North, Riverhead and Whenuapai |
| NUMP | Network Utilities Management Plan |
| Outline Plan | An outline plan prepared in accordance with section 176A of the RMA |
| Project Liaison Person | The person or persons appointed for the duration of the Project's Construction Works to be the main point of contact for persons wanting information about the Project or affected by the Construction Works |
| Protected Premises and Facilities (PPF) | Protected Premises and Facilities as defined in New Zealand Standard NZS 6806:2010: Acoustics – Road-traffic noise – New and altered roads |
| Requiring Authority | Has the same meaning as section 166 of the RMA and, for this Designation is New Zealand Transport Agency |
| RMA | Resource Management Act 1991 |

| | |
|---|---|
| SCEMP | Stakeholder Communication and Engagement Management Plan |
| Stakeholder | Stakeholders to be identified in accordance with Condition 3, which may include as appropriate:<br>(a) adjacent owners and occupiers;<br>(b) adjacent business owners and operators;<br>(c) central and local government bodies;<br>(d) community groups;<br>(e) developers;<br>(f) development agencies;<br>(g) educational facilities; and<br>(h) network utility operators |
| Stage of Work | Any physical works that require the development of an Outline Plan |
| Start of Construction | The time when Construction Works (excluding Enabling Works) start |
| Suitably Qualified Person | A person (or persons) who can provide sufficient evidence to demonstrate their suitability, experience and competence in the relevant field of expertise |
| TMP | Tree Management Plan |
| ULDMP | Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **General conditions** | |
| **1.** | **Activity in General Accordance with Plans and Information**<br>(a) Except as provided for in the conditions below, and subject to final design and Outline Plan(s), works within the designation shall be undertaken in general accordance with the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1<br>(b) Where there is inconsistency between:<br>(i) the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1 and the requirements of the following conditions, the conditions shall prevail;<br>(ii) the Project description and concept plan in Schedule 1, and the management plans under the conditions of the designation, the requirements of the management plans shall prevail. |
| **2.** | **Project Information**<br>(a) A project website, or equivalent virtual information source, shall be established as soon as reasonably practicable, and within six months of the inclusion of this designation in the AUP.<br>(b) All directly affected owners and occupiers shall be notified in writing as soon as reasonably practicable once the website or equivalent information source has been established. The project website or virtual information source shall include these conditions and shall provide information on:<br>(i) the status of the Project;<br>(ii) anticipated construction timeframes;<br>(iii) contact details for enquiries;<br>(iv) the implications of the designation for landowners, occupiers and business owners and operators within the designation on how / where they can receive additional support following confirmation of the designation;<br>(v) a subscription service to enable receipt of project updates by email;<br>(vi) when and how to apply for consent for works in the designation under section 176(1)(b) of the RMA; and<br>(vii) how/where to access noise modelling contours to inform development adjacent to the designation.<br>(c) At the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the project website or virtual information source shall be updated to provide information on the likely date for Start of Construction, and any staging of works. |
| **3.** | **Stakeholder Communication and Engagement**<br>(a) At least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the Requiring Authority shall identify:<br>(i) a list of Stakeholders;<br>(ii) a list of properties within the designation which the Requiring Authority does not own or have occupation rights to; and<br>(iii) methods to engage with Stakeholders and the owners and occupiers of properties identified in 3(a)(i) –(ii) above.<br>(b) A record of (a) shall be submitted with an Outline Plan for the relevant Stage of Work. |
| **4.** | **Designation Review**<br>As soon as reasonably practicable following Completion of Construction, the Requiring Authority shall:<br>(i) review the extent of the designation to identify any areas of designated land that it no longer requires for the on-going operation, maintenance or mitigation of effects of the Project; and<br>(ii) give notice to Auckland Council in accordance with section 182 of the RMA for the removal of those parts of the designation identified above. |
| **5.** | **Lapse**<br>In accordance with section 184(1)(c) of the RMA, this designation shall lapse if not given effect to within 20 years from the date on which it is included in the AUP. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 6. | **Network Utility Operators (Section 176 Approval)**<br>(a) Prior to the start of Construction Works, Network Utility Operators with existing infrastructure will not require written consent under section 176 of the RMA for the following activities:<br>(i) operation, maintenance and repair works;<br>(ii) minor renewal works to existing network utilities necessary for the on-going provision or security of supply of network utility operations;<br>(iii) minor works such as new service connections; and<br>(iv) the upgrade and replacement of existing network utilities in the same location with the same or similar effects on the work authorised by the designation as the existing utility.<br>(b) To the extent that a record of written approval is required for the activities listed above, this condition shall constitute written approval. |
| **Pre-construction conditions** | |
| 7. | **Outline Plan**<br>(a) An Outline Plan (or Plans) shall be prepared in accordance with section 176A of the RMA.<br>(b) Outline Plans (or Plan) may be submitted in parts or in stages to address particular activities (e.g. design or construction aspects), or a Stage of Work of the Project.<br>(c) Outline Plans shall include any management plan or plans that are relevant to the management of effects of those activities or Stage of Work, which may include:<br>(i) Construction Environmental Management Plan;<br>(ii) Construction Traffic Management Plan;<br>(iii) Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan;<br>(iv) Network Integration Management Plan;<br>(v) Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan;<br>(vi) Historic Heritage Management Plan;<br>(vii) Ecological Management Plan;<br>(viii) Tree Management Plan; and<br>(ix) Network Utilities Management Plan. |
| 8. | **Network Utilities Integration**<br>The Requiring Authority shall consult with Network Utility Operators during the detailed design phase to consider opportunities to enable, or not preclude, the development of new network utility facilities including access to power and ducting within the Project, where practicable to do so. The consultation undertaken, opportunities considered, and whether or not they have been incorporated into the detailed design, shall be summarised in the Outline Plan(s) prepared for the Project. |
| | **Flood Hazard**<br>For the purpose of Condition 9:<br>(a) AEP – means Annual Exceedance Probability;<br>(b) Existing authorised habitable floor – means the floor level of any room (floor) in a residential building which is authorised and exists at the time the outline plan is submitted, excluding a laundry, bathroom, toilet or any room used solely as an entrance hall, passageway or garage;<br>(c) Flood prone area – means potential ponding areas that may flood and commonly comprise of topographical depression areas. The areas can occur naturally or as a result of constructed features;<br>(d) Maximum Probable Development – is the design case for consideration of future flows allowing for development within a catchment that takes into account the maximum impervious surface limits of the current zone or if the land is zoned Future Urban in the AUP, the probable level of development arising from zone changes;<br>(e) Pre-Project development – means existing site condition prior to the Project (including existing buildings and roadways); and<br>(f) Post-Project development – means site condition after the Project has been completed (including existing and new buildings and roadways). |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 9. | **Flood Hazard**<br>(a) The Project shall be designed to achieve the following flood risk outcomes:<br>(i) no increase in flood levels in a 1% AEP event for existing authorised habitable floors that are already subject to flooding or have a freeboard less than 500mm;<br>(ii) no increase in flood levels in a 1% AEP event for existing authorised community, commercial, industrial and network utility building floors that are already subject to flooding or have a freeboard less than 300mm;<br>(iii) maximum of 50mm increase in water level in a 1% AEP event outside and adjacent to the designation boundaries between the pre and post Project scenarios; and<br>(iv) no increase of Flood Hazard for the main access to authorised habitable dwellings existing at time the Outline Plan is submitted. The assessment shall be undertaken for the 1% AEP rainfall event.<br>(v) Where Flood Hazard is:<br>A. velocity x depth greater than or equal to 0.6; or<br>B. depth greater than 0.5m; or<br>C. velocity greater than 2m/s.<br>(b) Compliance with this condition shall be demonstrated in the Outline Plan, which shall include flood modelling of the pre-Project and post-Project 1% AEP flood levels (for Maximum Probable Development land use with allowances for climate change).<br>(c) Where the above outcomes can be achieved through alternative measures outside of the designation such as flood stop banks, flood walls, raising existing authorised habitable floor level and new overland flow paths or varied through agreement with the relevant landowner, confirmation shall be provided that any necessary landowner and statutory approvals have been obtained for that work or alternative outcome. |
| 10. | **Existing property access**<br>Prior to submission of the Outline Plan, consultation shall be undertaken with landowners and occupiers whose vehicle access to their property will be altered by the project. The Outline Plan shall demonstrate how safe reconfigured or alternate access will be provided, unless otherwise addressed with the affected landowner. |
| 11. | **Management Plans**<br>(a) Any management plan shall:<br>(i) be prepared and implemented in accordance with the relevant management plan condition;<br>(ii) be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person(s);<br>(iii) include sufficient detail relating to the management of effects associated with the relevant activities and/or Stage of Work to which it relates;<br>(iv) summarise comments received from Mana Whenua and stakeholders as required by the relevant management plan condition, along with a summary of where comments have:<br>A. been incorporated; and<br>B. where not incorporated, the reasons why.<br>(v) be submitted as part of an Outline Plan pursuant to section 176A of the RMA, with the exception of SCEMPs and CNVMP Schedules;<br>(vi) once finalised, uploaded to the Project website or equivalent virtual information source.<br>(b) Any management plan developed in accordance with Condition 11 may:<br>(i) be submitted in parts or in stages to address particular activities (e.g. design or construction aspects), a Stage of Work of the Project, or to address specific activities authorised by the designation;<br>(ii) except for material changes, be amended to reflect any changes in design, construction methods or management of effects without further process;<br>(c) If there is a material change required to a management plan which has been submitted with an Outline Plan, the revised part of the plan shall be submitted to the Council as an update to the Outline Plan or for Certification as soon as practicable following identification of the need for a revision;<br>(d) Any material changes to the SCEMP(s) are to be submitted to the Council for information. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 12. | **Stakeholder Communication and Engagement Management Plan (SCEMP)**<br>(a) A SCEMP shall be prepared in consultation with Stakeholders prior to the Start of Construction. The objective of the SCEMP is to identify how the public and Stakeholders will be engaged with throughout Construction Works.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the SCEMP shall include:<br>(i) a list of Stakeholders;<br>(ii) a list of properties within the designation which the Requiring Authority does not own or have occupation rights to;<br>(iii) methods to engage with Stakeholders and the owners of properties identified in 12(b)(ii) above;<br>(iv) the contact details for the Project Liaison Person. These details shall be on the Project website, or equivalent virtual information source, and prominently displayed at the main entrance(s) to the site(s);<br>(v) methods for engaging with Mana Whenua, to be developed in consultation with Mana Whenua;<br>(vi) methods and timing to engage with owners and occupiers whose access is directly affected;<br>(vii) methods to communicate key project milestones and the proposed hours of construction activities including outside of normal working hours and on weekends and public holidays, to the parties identified in 12(b)(i) and (ii) above; and<br>(viii) linkages and cross-references to communication and engagement methods set out in other conditions and management plans where relevant.<br>(c) Any SCEMP prepared for a Stage of Work shall be submitted to Council for information a minimum of ten working days prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. |
| 13. | **Network Integration Management Plan (NIMP)**<br>(a) At least six (6) months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, the Requiring Authority shall prepare, in collaboration with other relevant road controlling authorities, a Network Integration Management Plan (NIMP).<br>(b) The objective of the NIMP is to identify how the Project will integrate with the planned transport network in the North West growth area to achieve an effective, efficient and safe land transport system. To achieve this objective, the NIMP shall include details of the:<br>(i) Project implementation approach and any staging of the Project, including design, management and operational matters; and<br>(ii) Sequencing of the Project with the planned transport network, including design, management and operational matters. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **14.** | **Cultural Advisory Report**<br>(a) At least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, Mana Whenua shall be invited to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report for the Project. The objective of the Cultural Advisory Report is to assist in understanding and identifying Ngā Taonga Tuku Iho ('treasures handed down by our ancestors') affected by the Project, to inform their management and protection.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the Requiring Authority shall invite Mana Whenua to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report that:<br>(i) identifies the cultural sites, landscapes and values that have the potential to be affected by the construction and operation of the Project;<br>(ii) sets out the desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values;<br>(iii) identifies traditional cultural practices within the area that may be impacted by the Project;<br>(iv) identifies opportunities for restoration and enhancement of identified cultural sites, landscapes and values within the Project area;<br>(v) taking into account the outcomes of 14(b)(i) to (iv) above, identify cultural matters and principles that should be considered in the development of the ULDMP and HHMP, and the CMP referred to in Condition 20;<br>(vi) identifies and (if possible) nominates traditional names along the Project alignment. Noting there may be formal statutory processes outside the Project required in any decision-making.<br>(c) The desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values identified in the Cultural Advisory Report shall be discussed with Mana Whenua and those outcomes reflected in the relevant management plans where practicable;<br>(d) Conditions 14(b) and (c) will cease to apply if:<br>(i) Mana Whenua have been invited to prepare a Cultural Advisory Report by a date at least six months prior to start of Construction Works; and<br>(ii) Mana Whenua have not provided a Cultural Advisory Report within six months prior to start of Construction Works. |
| | **Urban and Landscape Design Management Plan (ULDMP)** |
| **15.** | (a) A ULDMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the ULDMP(s) is to:<br>(i) enable integration of the Project's permanent works into the surrounding landscape and urban context; and<br>(ii) ensure that the Project manages potential adverse landscape and visual effects as far as practicable and contributes to a quality urban environment.<br>(b) Mana Whenua shall be invited to participate in the development of the ULDMP(s) to provide input into relevant cultural landscape and design matters including how desired outcomes for management of potential effects on cultural sites, landscapes and values identified and discussed in accordance with Condition 14 may be reflected in the ULDMP.<br>(c) Relevant stakeholders shall be invited to participate in the development of the ULDMP at least six months prior to the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **16.** | (a) To achieve the objective set out in Condition 15, the ULDMP(s) shall provide details of how the project:<br>(i) is designed to integrate with the adjacent urban (or proposed urban) and landscape context, including the surrounding existing or proposed topography, urban environment (i.e. centres and density of built form), natural environment, landscape character and open space zones;<br>(ii) provides appropriate walking and cycling connectivity to, and interfaces with, existing or proposed adjacent land uses, public transport infrastructure and walking and cycling connections;<br>(iii) promotes inclusive access (where appropriate);<br>(iv) promotes a sense of personal safety by aligning with best practice guidelines, such as:<br>A. Crime Prevention Through Environmental Design (CPTED) principles;<br>B. Safety in Design (SID) requirements; and<br>C. Maintenance in Design (MID) requirements and anti-vandalism/anti-graffiti measures; and<br>(v) Interfaces with the operational areas of commercial premises within business zoned land, including loading areas, internal circulation and car parking, where practicable.<br>(b) The ULDMP shall be prepared in general accordance with:<br>(i) Waka Kotahi Urban Design Guidelines: Bridging the Gap (2013) or any subsequent updated version;<br>(ii) NZTA Landscape Guidelines (2018) or any subsequent updated version; and<br>(iii) Waka Kotahi P39 Standard Specification for Highway Landscape Treatments (2013) or any subsequent updated version. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **17.** | The ULDMP(s) shall include:<br>(a) a concept plan – which depicts the overall landscape and urban design concept, and explain the rationale for the landscape and urban design proposals;<br>(b) developed design concepts, including principles for walking and cycling facilities and public transport; and<br>(c) landscape and urban design details – that cover the following:<br>(i) road design – elements such as intersection form, carriageway gradient and associated earthworks contouring including cut and fill batters, shaped to a natural profile where practicable and appropriate to the surrounding context, and the interface with adjacent land uses and existing roads (including slip lanes), benching, spoil disposal sites, median width and treatment, roadside width and treatment;<br>(ii) roadside elements – such as lighting, fencing, wayfinding and signage;<br>(iii) architectural and landscape treatment of all major structures, including bridges and retaining walls;<br>(iv) architectural and landscape treatment of noise barriers;<br>(v) landscape treatment and planting of permanent stormwater control wetlands and swales;<br>(vi) integration of passenger transport;<br>(vii) pedestrian and cycle facilities including paths, road crossings and dedicated pedestrian/ cycle bridges or underpasses;<br>(viii) historic heritage places with reference to the HHMP (Condition 26); and<br>(ix) re-instatement of construction and site compound areas; and<br>(x) re-instatement of features to be retained such as:<br>A. boundary features;<br>B. landscaping;<br>C. driveways;<br>D. accessways; and<br>E. fences.<br>(d) The ULDMP shall also include the following planting details and maintenance requirements:<br>(i) planting design details including:<br>A. identification of existing trees and vegetation that will be retained with reference to the TMP and Ecological Management Plan. Where practicable, mature trees and native vegetation should be retained;<br>B. street trees, shrubs and ground cover suitable for the location;<br>C. treatment of fill slopes to integrate with adjacent land use, streams, Riparian margins and open space zones;<br>D. identification of any planting requirements under the Ecological Management Plan (Conditions 28) and TMP (Condition 29); and<br>E. integration of any planting requirements required by conditions of any resource consents for the project;<br>(ii) a planting programme including the staging of planting in relation to the construction programme which shall, as far as practicable, include provision for planting within each planting season following completion of works in each Stage of Work; and<br>(iii) detailed specifications relating to the following:<br>A. weed control and clearance;<br>B. pest animal management (to support plant establishment);<br>C. ground preparation (top soiling and decompaction);<br>D. mulching; and<br>E. plant sourcing and planting, including hydroseeding and grassing, and use of eco-sourced species |
| **Specific Outline Plan requirements** | |
| **Construction conditions** | |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 18. | **Construction Environmental Management Plan (CEMP)**<br>(a) A CEMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the CEMP is to set out the management procedures and construction methods to be undertaken to, avoid, remedy or mitigate any adverse effects associated with Construction Works as far as practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CEMP shall include:<br>(i) the roles and responsibilities of staff and contractors;<br>(ii) details of the site or project manager and the Project Liaison Person, including their contact details (phone and email address);<br>(iii) the Construction Works programmes and the staging approach, and the proposed hours of work;<br>(iv) details of the proposed construction yards including temporary screening when adjacent to residential zones;<br>(v) details of the proposed construction lighting;<br>(vi) methods for controlling dust and the removal of debris and demolition of construction materials from public roads or places;<br>(vii) methods for providing for the health and safety of the general public;<br>(viii) measures to mitigate flood hazard effects such as siting stockpiles out of floodplains, minimising obstruction to flood flows, actions to respond to warnings of heavy rain;<br>(ix) procedures for incident management;<br>(x) location and procedures for the refuelling and maintenance of plant and equipment to avoid discharges of fuels or lubricants to watercourses;<br>(xi) measures to address the storage of fuels, lubricants, hazardous and/or dangerous materials, along with contingency procedures to address emergency spill response(s) and clean up;<br>(xii) summary of measures included to respond to matters raised in engagement, if not already covered above;<br>(xiii) procedures for responding to complaints about Construction Works; and<br>(xiv) methods for amending and updating the CEMP as required. |
| 19. | **Complaints Register**<br>(a) At all times during Construction Works, a record of any complaints received about the Construction Works shall be maintained. The record shall include:<br>(i) the date, time and nature of the complaint;<br>(ii) the name, phone number and address of the complainant (unless the complainant wishes to remain anonymous);<br>(iii) measures taken to respond to the complaint (including a record of the response provided to the complainant) or confirmation of no action if deemed appropriate;<br>(iv) the outcome of the investigation into the complaint; and<br>(v) any other activities in the area, unrelated to the Project that may have contributed to the complaint, such as non-project construction, fires, traffic accidents or unusually dusty conditions generally.<br>(b) A copy of the Complaints Register required by this condition shall be made available to the Manager upon request as soon as practicable after the request is made. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 20. | **Cultural Monitoring Plan (CMP)**<br>(a) Prior to the start of Construction Works, a CMP shall be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person(s) identified in collaboration with Mana Whenua. The objective of the CMP is to identify methods for undertaking cultural monitoring to assist with management of any cultural effects during Construction works.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CMP shall include:<br>(i) Requirements for formal dedication or cultural interpretation to be undertaken prior to start of Construction Works in areas identified as having significance to Mana Whenua;<br>(ii) Requirements and protocols for cultural inductions for contractors and subcontractors;<br>(iii) Identification of activities, sites and areas where cultural monitoring is required during particular Construction Works;<br>(iv) Identification of personnel to undertake cultural monitoring, including any geographic definition of their responsibilities; and<br>(v) Details of personnel to assist with management of any cultural effects identified during cultural monitoring, including implementation of the Accidental Discovery Protocol<br>(c) If Enabling Works involving soil disturbance are undertaken prior to the start of Construction Works, an Enabling Works CMP shall be prepared by a Suitably Qualified Person identified in collaboration with Mana Whenua. This plan may be prepared as a standalone Enabling Works CMP or be included in the main Construction Works CMP.<br><br>**Advice note:**<br>Where appropriate, the CMP shall align with the requirements of other conditions of the designation and resource consents for the Project which require monitoring during Construction Works. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 21. | **Construction Traffic Management Plan (CTMP)**<br>(a) A CTMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the CTMP is to avoid, remedy or mitigate, as far as practicable, adverse construction traffic effects.<br>(b) To achieve this objective, the CTMP shall include:<br>(i) methods to manage the effects of temporary traffic management activities on traffic;<br>(ii) measures to ensure the safety of all transport users;<br>(iii) the estimated numbers, frequencies, routes and timing of traffic movements, including any specific non-working or non-movement hours to manage vehicular and pedestrian traffic near educational facilities or to manage traffic congestion;<br>(iv) site access routes and access points for heavy vehicles, the size and location of parking areas for plant, construction vehicles and the vehicles of workers and visitors;<br>(v) identification of detour routes and other methods to ensure the safe management and maintenance of traffic flows, including public transport services, pedestrians and cyclists;<br>(vi) methods to maintain access to and within property and/or private roads where practicable, or to provide alternative arrangements when it will not be, including details of how access is managed for loading and unloading of goods. Engagement with landowners or occupiers whose access is directly affected shall be undertaken in accordance with the SCEMP;<br>(vii) the management approach to loads on heavy vehicles, including covering loads of fine material, the use of wheel-wash facilities at site exit points and the timely removal of any material deposited or spilled on public roads;<br>(viii) methods that will be undertaken to communicate traffic management measures to affected road users (e.g. residents / public / stakeholders / emergency services);<br>(ix) details of minimum network performance parameters during the construction phase, including any measures to monitor compliance with the performance parameters; and<br>(x) details of any measures proposed to be implemented in the event of thresholds identified in 21(b)(ix) being exceeded.<br>(c) Auditing, monitoring and reporting requirements relating to traffic management activities shall be undertaken in accordance with the New Zealand Guide to Temporary Traffic Management (April 2023) or any subsequent version. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 22. | **Construction Noise Standards**<br>(a) Construction noise shall be measured and assessed in accordance with NZS6803:1999 Acoustics – Construction Noise and shall comply with the noise standards set out in the following table as far as practicable:<br><br>**Table 22-1 Construction Noise Standards**<br><br>(b) Where compliance with the noise standards set out in Table 22-1 is not practicable, the methodology in Condition 25 shall apply. |

| Day of week | Time period | $L_{Aeq(15min)}$ | $L_{AFmax}$ |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Occupied activity sensitive to noise** | | | |
| Weekday | 0630h - 0730h | 55 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 70 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 65 dB | 80 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| Saturday | 0630h - 0730h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 70 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| Sunday and Public Holidays | 0630h - 0730h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 0730h - 1800h | 55 dB | 85 dB |
| | 1800h - 2000h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| | 2000h - 0630h | 45 dB | 75 dB |
| **Other occupied buildings** | | | |
| All | 0730h – 1800h | 70 dB | |
| | 1800h – 0730h | 75 dB | |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 23. | **Construction Vibration Standards**<br>(a) Construction vibration shall be measured in accordance with ISO 4866:2010 Mechanical vibration and shock – Vibration of fixed structures – Guidelines for the measurement of vibrations and evaluation of their effects on structures and shall comply with the vibration standards set out in Table 23-1 as far as practicable.<br><br>**Table 23-1 Construction Vibration Standards** |

| Receiver | Details | Category A* | Category B* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Occupied activities sensitive to noise | Night-time 2000h - 0630h | 0.3mm/s ppv | 1mm/s ppv |
| | Daytime 0630h - 2000h | 1mm/s ppv | 5mm/s ppv |
| Other occupied buildings | Daytime 0630h - 2000h | 2mm/s ppv | 5mm/s ppv |
| All other buildings | At all other times Vibration transient | 5mm/s ppv | BS 5228-2** Table B2 |
| | At all other times Vibration continuous | 5mm/s ppv | BS 5228-2** 50% of Table B2 values |

** Refer to NZTA State highway construction and maintenance noise and vibration guide for further explanation regarding Category A and B criteria*

*** BS 5228-2:2009 'Code of practice for noise and vibration control on construction and open sites – Part 2: Vibration'*

(b) Where compliance with the vibration standards set out in Table 23-1 is not practicable, the methodology in Condition 25 shall apply.

(c) If measured or predicted vibration from construction activities exceeds the Category A criteria, a Suitably Qualified Person shall assess and manage construction vibration during those activities.

(d) If measured or predicted vibration from construction activities exceeds the Category B criteria those activities must only proceed if vibration effects on affected buildings are assessed, monitored and mitigated by a Suitably Qualified Person.

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 24. | **Construction Noise and Vibration Management Plan (CNVMP)**<br>(a) A CNVMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for Stage of Work. A CNVMP shall be implemented during the Stage of Work to which it relates. The objective of the CNVMP is to provide a framework for the development and implementation of the Best Practicable Option for the management of construction noise and vibration effects to achieve the construction noise and vibration standards set out in Conditions 22 and 23 to the extent practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the CNVMP shall be prepared in accordance with Annex E2 of the New Zealand Standard NZS6803:1999 'Acoustics – Construction Noise' (NZS6803:1999) and shall as a minimum, address the following:<br>(i) description of the works and anticipated equipment/processes;<br>(ii) hours of operation, including times and days when construction activities would occur;<br>(iii) the construction noise and vibration standards for the project;<br>(iv) identification of receivers where noise and vibration standards apply;<br>(v) a hierarchy of management and mitigation options, including any requirements to limit night works and works during other sensitive times, including Sundays and public holidays as far as practicable;<br>(vi) methods and frequency for monitoring and reporting on construction noise and vibration;<br>(vii) procedures for communication and engagement with nearby residents and stakeholders, including notification of proposed construction activities, the period of construction activities, and management of noise and vibration complaints.<br>(viii) contact details of the Project Liaison Person;<br>(ix) procedures for the regular training of the operators of construction equipment to minimise noise and vibration as well as expected construction site behaviours for all workers;<br>(x) procedures and requirements for the preparation of a Schedule to the CNVMP (Schedule) for those areas where compliance with the noise Condition 22 and/or vibration standards Condition 23 Category A or Category B will not be practicable;<br>(xi) identification of trigger levels for undertaking building condition surveys, which shall be below Category B day time levels;<br>(xii) procedures and trigger levels for undertaking building condition surveys before and after works to determine whether any cosmetic or structural damage has occurred as a result of construction vibration;<br>(xiii) methodology and programme of desktop and field audits and inspections to be undertaken to ensure that the CNVMP, Schedules and the best practicable option for management of effects are being implemented; and<br>(xiv) requirements for review and update of the CNVMP. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| **25.** | **Schedule to a CNVMP**<br>(a) A Schedule to the CNVMP (Schedule) shall be prepared prior to the start of the construction to which it relates by a Suitably Qualified Person, in consultation with the owners and occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule, when:<br>(i) Construction noise is either predicted or measured to exceed the noise standards in Condition 22<br>(ii) Construction vibration is either predicted or measured to exceed the Category A standard at the receivers in Condition 23.<br>(b) The objective of the Schedule is to set out the Best Practicable Option measures to manage noise and/or vibration effects of the construction activity beyond those measures set out in the CNVMP.<br>(c) To achieve the objective, the Schedule shall include details such as:<br>(i) construction activity location, start and finish times;<br>(ii) the nearest neighbours to the construction activity;<br>(iii) the predicted noise and/or vibration level for all receivers where the levels are predicted or measured to exceed the applicable standards in Conditions 22 and 23 and the predicted duration of the exceedance;<br>(iv) for works proposed between 2000h and 0630h, the reasons why the proposed works must be undertaken during these hours and why they cannot be practicably undertaken during the daytime;<br>(v) the proposed mitigation options that have been selected, and the options that have been discounted as being impracticable and the reasons why;<br>(vi) a summary of the consultation undertaken with owners and occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule, and how consultation has and has not been taken into account; and<br>(vii) location, times and types of monitoring.<br>(d) The Schedule shall be submitted to the Manager for information at least 5 working days (except in unforeseen circumstances) in advance of Construction Works that are covered by the scope of the Schedule and shall form part of the CNVMP. If any comments are received from the Manager, these shall be considered by the Requiring Authority prior to implementation of the Schedule.<br>(e) Where material changes are made to a Schedule required by this condition, the Requiring Authority shall consult the owners and/or occupiers of sites subject to the Schedule prior to submitting the amended Schedule to the Manager for information in accordance with (d) above. The amended Schedule shall document the consultation undertaken with those owners and occupiers, and how consultation outcomes have and have not been taken into account. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 26. | **Historic Heritage Management Plan (HHMP)**<br>(a) A HHMP shall be prepared in consultation with Council, HNZPT and Mana Whenua prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the HHMP is to protect historic heritage and to remedy and mitigate any residual effects as far as practicable.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the HHMP shall identify:<br>(i) any adverse direct and indirect effects on historic heritage sites and measures to appropriately avoid, remedy or mitigate any such effects, including a tabulated summary of these effects and measures;<br>(ii) methods for the identification and assessment of potential historic heritage places within the Designation to inform detailed design;<br>(iii) known historic heritage places and potential archaeological sites within the Designation, including identifying any archaeological sites for which an Archaeological Authority under the HNZPTA will be sought or has been granted;<br>(iv) any unrecorded archaeological sites or post-1900 heritage sites within the Designation, which shall also be documented and recorded;<br>(v) roles, responsibilities and contact details of Project personnel, Council and HNZPT representatives, Mana Whenua representatives, and relevant agencies involved with heritage and archaeological matters including surveys, monitoring of Construction Works, compliance with AUP accidental discovery rule, and monitoring of conditions;<br>(vi) specific areas to be investigated, monitored and recorded to the extent these are directly affected by the Project;<br>(vii) The proposed methodology for investigating and recording post-1900 historic heritage sites (including buildings) that need to be destroyed, demolished or relocated, including details of their condition, measures to mitigate any adverse effects and timeframe for implementing the proposed methodology, in accordance with the HNZPT Archaeological Guidelines Series No.1: Investigation and Recording of Buildings and Standing Structures (November 2018), or any subsequent version;<br>(viii) methods to acknowledge cultural values identified through Condition 14 where archaeological sites also involve ngā taonga tuku iho (treasures handed down by our ancestors) and where feasible and practicable to do so;<br>(ix) methods for avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects on historic heritage places and sites within the Designation during Construction Works as far as practicable. These methods shall include, but are not limited to:<br>A. security fencing or hoardings around historic heritage places to protect them from damage during construction or unauthorised access;<br>B. measures to mitigate adverse effects on historic heritage sites that achieve positive historic heritage outcomes such as increased public awareness and interpretation signage; and<br>C. training requirements and inductions for contractors and subcontractors on historic heritage places within the Designation, legal obligations relating to unexpected discoveries and the AUP Accidental Discovery Rule (E11.6.1). The training shall be undertaken prior to the Start of Construction, under the guidance of a Suitably Qualified Person and Mana Whenua representatives (to the extent the training relates to cultural values identified under Condition 14).<br><br>**Advice note:**<br>**Accidental Discoveries**<br>The requirements for accidental discoveries of heritage items are set out in Rule E11.6.1 of the AUP and in the NZTA Minimum Standard P45 Accidental Archaeological Discovery Specification, or any subsequent version. |

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| 27. | **Pre-Construction Ecological Survey**<br>(a) At the start of detailed design for a Stage of Work, an updated ecological survey shall be undertaken by a Suitably Qualified Person. The purpose of the survey is to inform ecological management by:<br>(i) confirming whether the species of value within the Identified Biodiversity Areas recorded in the Identified Biodiversity Area Schedule 2 are still present; and<br>(ii) confirming whether the project will or may have a moderate or greater level of ecological effect on ecological species of value, prior to implementation of impact management measures with the level of effect to be determined in accordance with Table 10 of the EIANZ guidelines as included in Schedule 3 to these conditions (or subsequent updated version of the table).<br>(b) If the ecological survey confirms the presence of ecological species of value in accordance with Condition 27(a)(i) and that effects are likely in accordance with Condition 27(a)(ii) then an Ecological Management Plan (or Plans) shall be prepared in accordance with Condition 28 for these areas (Confirmed Biodiversity Areas). |

**28. Ecological Management Plan (EMP)**

(a) An EMP shall be prepared for any Confirmed Biodiversity Areas (confirmed through Condition 27) prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the EMP is to minimise effects of the Project on the ecological features of value of Confirmed Biodiversity Areas as far as practicable.

(b) To achieve the objective, the EMP shall set out the methods which may include:

(i) If an EMP is required in accordance with Condition 27(b) for the presence of long tail bats:

A. measures to minimise as far as practicable, disturbance from construction activities within the vicinity of any active long tail bat roosts (including maternity) that are discovered through survey until such roosts are confirmed to be vacant of bats;

B. how the timing of any construction work in the vicinity of any maternity long tail bat roosts will be limited to outside the bat maternity period (between December and March) where reasonably practicable;

C. details of areas where vegetation is to be retained where practicable for the purposes of the connectivity of long tail bats;

D. details of how bat connectivity will be provided and maintained (e.g. through the presence of suitable indigenous or exotic trees or artificial alternatives). This could include identification of areas and timeframes for establishment of advance restoration / mitigation planting taking into account land ownership, accessibility and the timing of available funding, measures to manage the effects of light spill on bat connectivity as far as practicable; and

E. where mitigation to minimise effects is not practicable, details of any offsetting proposed.

(ii) If an EMP is required in accordance with Condition 27(b) for the presence of threatened or at risk wetland birds:

A. how the timing of any Construction Works shall be undertaken outside of the bird breeding season (September to February) where practicable;

B. where works are required within the Confirmed Biodiversity Area during the bird season, methods to minimise adverse effects on Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds;

C. undertaking a nesting bird survey of Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds prior to any Construction Works taking place within a 50m radius of any identified Wetlands (including establishment of construction areas adjacent to Wetlands). Surveys should be repeated at the beginning of each wetland bird breeding season and following periods of construction inactivity;

D. what protection and buffer measures will be provided where nesting Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds are identified within 50m of any construction area (including laydown areas). Measures could include:

a. a 20 m buffer area around the nest location and retaining vegetation. The buffer areas should be demarcated where necessary to protect birds from encroachment. This might include the use of marker poles, tape and signage;

b. monitoring of the nesting Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds by a Suitably Qualified Person. Construction works within the 20m nesting buffer areas should not occur until the Threatened or At-Risk wetland birds have fledged from the nest location (approximately 30 days from egg laying to fledging) as confirmed by a Suitably Qualified Person;

c. minimising the disturbance from the works if construction works are required within 50 m of a nest, as advised by a Suitably Qualified Person;

d. adopting a 10m setback where practicable, between the edge of Wetlands and construction areas (along the edge of the stockpile / laydown area); and

e. minimising light spill from construction areas into Wetlands

| No. | Condition |
|---|---|
| | (c) The EMP shall be consistent with any ecological management measures to be undertaken in compliance with conditions of any regional resource consents granted for the Project.<br>**Advice note:**<br>Depending on the potential effects of the Project, the regional consents for the Project may include the following monitoring and management plans:<br>(i) Stream and/or wetland restoration plans;<br>(ii) Vegetation restoration plans; and<br>(iii) Fauna management plans (eg avifauna, herpetofauna, bats). |
| **29.** | **Tree Management Plan (TMP)**<br>(a) Prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work, a TMP shall be prepared. The objective of the TMP is to avoid, remedy or mitigate effects of construction activities on trees identified as protected or notable in the Auckland Unitary Plan.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the TMP shall:<br>(i) confirm the trees that will be affected by the project work and are identified as protected or notable in the Auckland Unitary Plan; and<br>(ii) demonstrate how the design and location of project works has avoided, remedied or mitigated any effects on any tree identified in 29(b)(i) above. This may include:<br>A. any opportunities to relocate listed trees where practicable.<br>B. planting to replace trees that require removal (with reference to the ULDMP planting design details in Condition 17);<br>C. tree protection zones and tree protection measures such as protective fencing, ground protection and physical protection of roots, trunks and branches; and<br>D. methods for work within the rootzone of trees that are to be retained in line with accepted arboricultural standards.<br>(iii) demonstrate how the tree management measures (outlined in 29(b)(ii)A – D above) are consistent with conditions of any resource consents granted for the project in relation to managing construction effects on trees. |
| **30.** | **Network Utility Management Plan (NUMP)**<br>(a) A NUMP shall be prepared prior to the Start of Construction for a Stage of Work. The objective of the NUMP is to set out a framework for protecting, relocating and working in proximity to existing network utilities.<br>(b) To achieve the objective, the NUMP shall include methods to:<br>(i) provide access for maintenance at all reasonable times, or emergency works at all times during construction activities;<br>(ii) protect and where necessary, relocate existing network utilities;<br>(iii) manage the effects of dust and any other material potentially resulting from construction activities and able to cause material damage, beyond normal wear and tear to overhead transmission lines in the Project area;<br>(iv) demonstrate compliance with relevant standards and Codes of Practice including, where relevant, the NZECP 34:2001 New Zealand Electrical Code of Practice for Electrical Safe Distances 2001; AS/NZS 4853:2012 Electrical hazards on Metallic Pipelines; and AS/NZS 2885 Pipelines – Gas and Liquid Petroleum.<br>(c) The NUMP shall be prepared in consultation with the relevant Network Utility Operator(s) who have existing assets that are directly affected by the Project.<br>(d) Any comments received from the Network Utility Operator shall be considered when finalising the NUMP.<br>(e) Any amendments to the NUMP related to the assets of a Network Utility Operator shall be prepared in consultation with that asset owner. |
| | **Operational conditions** |

<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Condition</th></tr>
<tr><td>31.</td><td>Station Noise<br>All mechanical and electrical services (including Public Address system) shall be designed to comply with the following noise rating levels and maximum noise levels, as measured and assessed at any residential zone site boundary:<br>
<table>
<tr><th>Time</th><th>Noise level</th></tr>
<tr><td>Monday to Saturday 7am-10pm</td><td rowspan="2">50dB $L_{Aeq}$</td></tr>
<tr><td>Sunday 9am-6pm</td></tr>
<tr><td>All other times</td><td>40dB $L_{Aeq}$<br>75dB $L_{AFmax}$</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

## Attachments

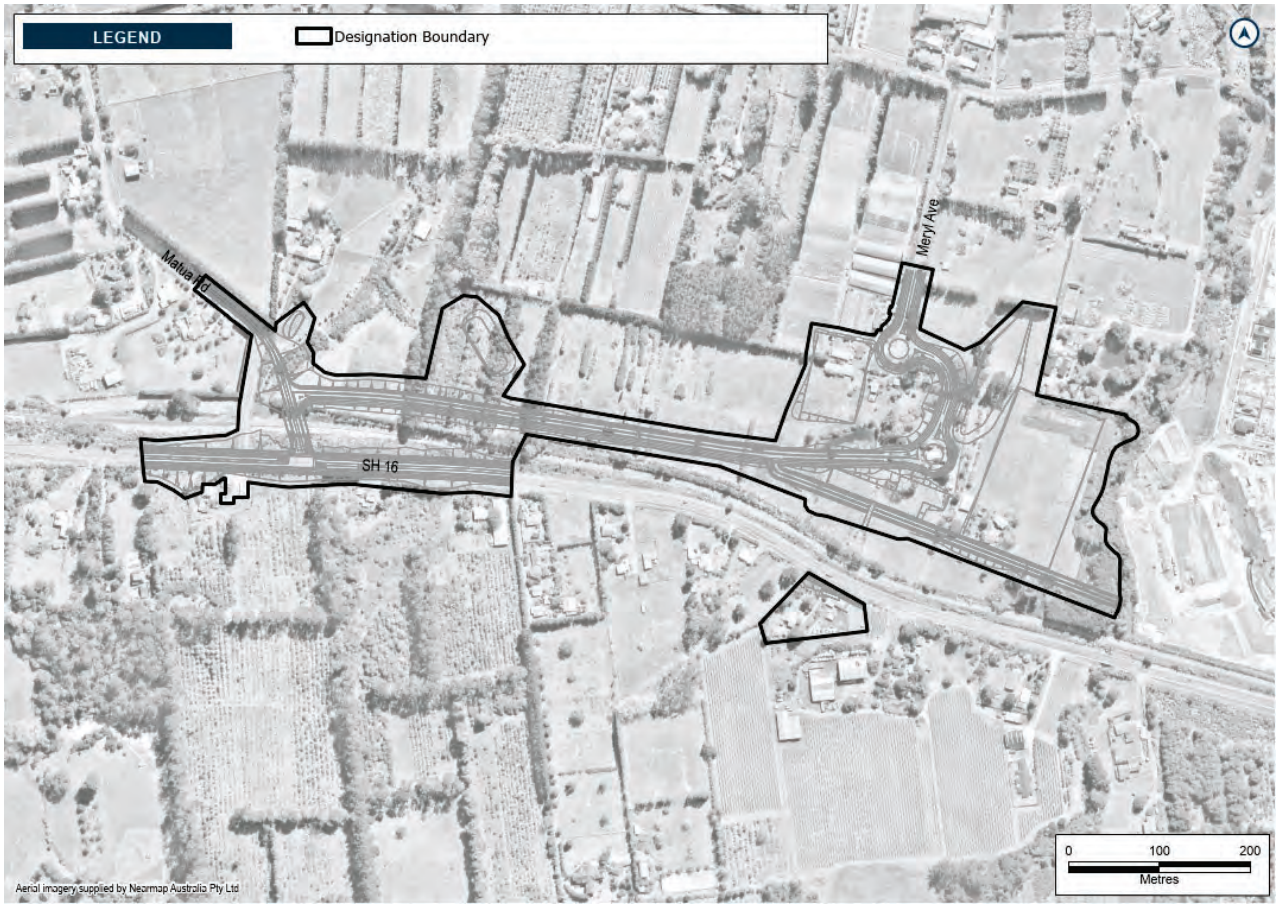
## Schedule 1: General Accordance Plans and Information

### Project Description

The proposed work is the construction, operation, and maintenance of a rapid transit station in Huapai, including active transport facilities and associated infrastructure. The proposed work is shown in the following Concept Plan and includes:

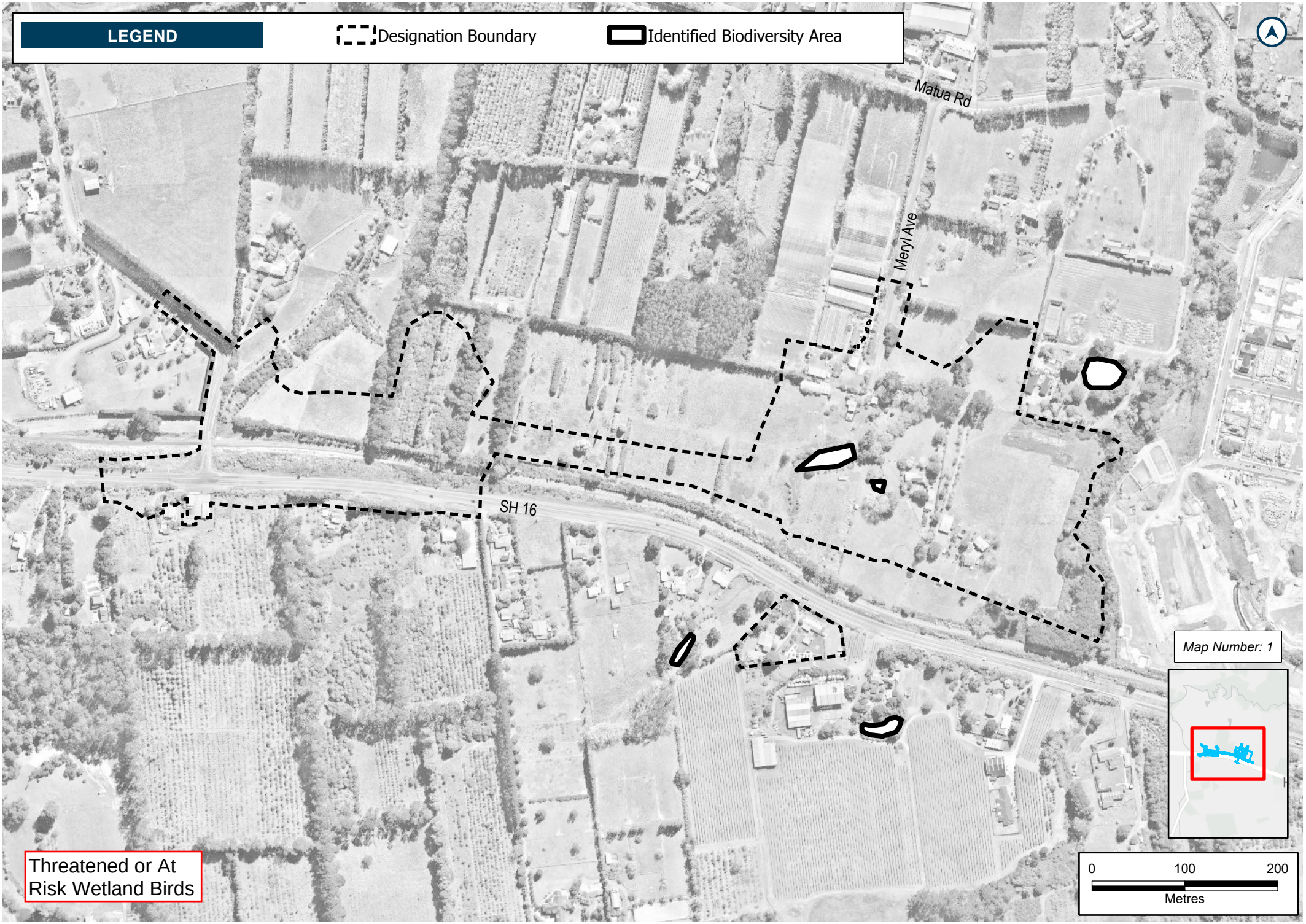
(a) A new rapid transit station, including active transport facilities;
(b) Associated works including transport interchange facilities, accessway, park and ride facilities, bridges, embankments, retaining, culverts, stormwater management systems;
(c) Changes to local roads, where the proposed work intersects with local roads; and
(d) Construction activities, including vegetation removal, construction compounds, laydown areas, bridge works area, construction traffic management and the re-grade of driveways.

### Concept Plan



**Schedule 2: Identified Biodiversity Areas**


LEGEND
Designation Boundary
Identified Biodiversity Area
Long-tailed Bat
Meryl Ave
Matua Rd
Tapu Rd
Oraha Rd
Main Rd
Wookey Lane
Grivelle St
Station Rd
Trigg Rd
Foster Rd
Motu Rd
Puke Rd
Tawa Rd
Access Rd
Weza Lane
Riverhead Rd
SH 16
Trotting Course Dr
Boord Cres
Pomona Rd
Hanham Rd
Waitakere Rd
Taupaki Rd
Nixon Rd
Nelson Rd
Old Railway Rd
Riverland Rd
Moontide Rd
Coatesville-Riverhead Hwy
Brigham Lane
Grove Way
Pitoitoi Kaipara Portage Dr
Riverhead Point Dr
Rd
Short Rd
Totara Rd
Joseph McDonald Dr
Boyes Ave
Ripeka Lane
Ngahue Cres
Nils Andersen Rd
Airport Rd
Kennedys Rd
Brigham Creek Rd
Marnari Rd
Spedding Rd
Hailes Rd
Fred Taylor Dr
Northside Dr
Auckland-Kumeu Mwy
Upper Harbour SH 18 Mwy
Trig Rd
Ryans Rd
Henwood Rd
Dunlop Rd
0
780
1,560
Metres




Name of Map: SGA-EC-NW-035-Strategic-Huapai-Stn-Bird-Mitigation
Path: P:\381\381093401\GIS\02 Data\1 Data Processing 550 Plus\669_NW_Ecology_Mitigation\SGA_NW_Ecology_Mitigation.aprx

**Schedule 3: Table 10 of the 2018 EIANZ Guidelines**

Criteria for describing level of effects (Adapted from Regini (2000) and Boffa Miskell (2011))

| Ecological Value → <br><br> Magnitude ↓ | Very high | High | Moderate | Low | Negligible |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Very high | Very high | Very high | High | Moderate | Low |
| High | Very high | Very high | Moderate | Low | Very low |
| Moderate | High | High | Moderate | Low | Very low |
| Low | Moderate | Low | Low | Very low | Very low |
| Negligible | Low | Very low | Very low | Very low | Very low |
| Positive | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain | Net gain |